

Vol . II  
No. 1

ISSN: 2976-114X

# **KOSHI PRAVAH**

Multidisciplinary Peer Reviewed Journal

**KOSHI PRAVAH**  
Multidisciplinary Peer Reviewed Journal

Vol . II  
No. 1  
August, 2023

Research Management Cell  
Koshi Saint James College, Itahari  
Tribhuvan University, Nepal  
August, 2023

## **Impact of Financial Leverage on the Performance of Nepalese Commercial Banks<sup>1</sup>**

Ambika Prasad Dulal, Subash Kumar Katwal and Md. Samim Khan  
Instructors at Department of Management, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email:*dulalashis.007@gmail.com*

*skdiwana.082@gmail.com*

*shamimkoshi@gmail.com*

### **Abstract**

The objective of this study is to investigate the impact of bank leverage on performance (profitability) of Nepalese commercial banks. Banks are highly leveraged institutions; so, it is an important task to measure the relation between banks' degree of financial leverage and performance. The sample size of this quantitative research guided by positivist research philosophy was twenty commercial banks of Nepal. The study has sought to explore the relationship between independent variable (debt ratio, DR & debt equity ratio, DER) and the dependent variables (net interest margin, NIM, return on assets, ROA, & return on equity, ROE). Bank performance was measured by ROA, NIM and ROE. These variables are the indicators of bank profitability and DR and DER are the indicators of leverage. The econometric method was applied in the study to investigate the relationship of financial leverage with performance of commercial banks. The study period covered ten years from 2012/13 to 2020/21. The data were analysed using descriptive statistics, correlation, simple regression, and multiple regression. Financial leverage was proxied by debt ratio and debt to equity ratio. The bank performance was measured by net interest margin, return on assets and return on equity. The results showed nonlinear relation between bank leverage and performance. It indicates that the bank management should pay attention while employing the borrowed funds to expand their business and operations.

*Keywords:* bank, leverage, nonlinear relation, performance

### **Introduction**

Financial leverage represents a firm's financial framework which consists of the debt and equity used to finance the firm. A firm's ability to carry out its stakeholders' requirements is closely related to capital structure. Therefore, this foundation is an imperative piece of information that should not be disregarded. Financial leverage, in

financial terms, means the way firms finance their assets through the mixture of a company's debt (long-term and short-term), common equity, and preferred equity (Akintoye, 2008). The foremost contemporary theory of capital structure started with the article of Modigliani and Miller (1958). Since then, various studies have been carried out to investigate the

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, July 3  
Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 19  
Accepted on 2023, July 29

optimal capital structure in the absence of Modigliani Miller's assumption

The bank and financial institutions are crucial components of the healthy and wealthy financial system of the country. They receive money from those who want to save in the form of deposits and lends money to those who need it. Thus, it is said that the banking sector mirrors the larger economy (Singh & Dutta, 2013). Financial leverage has always been one of the main topics among the studies of finance. Its importance derives from the fact that capital structure is tightly related to the ability of firms to fulfil the needs of various stakeholders. The last century has witnessed the continuous development of new theories on the optimal debt to equity ratio. The first milestone on the issue was set by Modigliani and Miller (1958) whose model argued on their relevance of the capital structure in determining a firm's value and performance.

Financial leverage allows a greater potential return to the investors than otherwise would have been available, but the potential loss is also greater, if the investment becomes worthless, the loan principal and all accrued interest on the loan still need to be repaid. The optimal financial leverage structure implies that with the smallest amount of weighted average cost of capital there is the maximization of the worth of the organization. Although optimal financial leverage is a concept that has been researched severally, yet one cannot find any formula or theory that, with certainty, provides optimal financial leverage for an organization (Tian & Zeitun, 2007).

Leverage comes under financial strategy planning which helps to increase the rate of return by generating a greater return on borrowed money than the cost of using that money. If a firm's return on asset is greater than the before-tax interest rate paid on debt, then we can say that leverage is positive. If the return on asset of the firm is less than before-tax interest rate, then we can say that leverage is negative (Larry & Stulz, 1995). Mandelker and Rhee (1984) showed that the most profitable firm in many industries often have the lowest leverage ratio. They found that large positive abnormal returns for a firm's stockholders are associated with leverage increasing events such as a stock repurchase or debt for equity exchange instead of leverage decreasing events such as issuing stocks.

Mangalam and Govindasamy (2010) analysed and understood the impact of leverage on the performance of the firm by investigating the relationship between the leverage and the earning per share. This study analysed leverage in three ways: financial leverage, operating leverage, and combine leverage. The basic responsibility of corporate financial managers is to boost up the property of participators, raise of investment, and reduction in the capital cost. Thus, the study reaches this conclusion from the theory of capital structure that the cost of outside equity reduces through high leverage. Managers of firms do right-way jobs in favour of the interest of shareholders (Berger & Patti, 2006). Baker (1973) analysed the effect of financial leverage or relatively greater use of debt capital, on industry performance.

Ezeoha (2008) showed the significance of the firm size as a determinant of corporate financial leverage from an undeveloped market perspective. The key variables used in the study were firm size, financial leverage ratios, profitability, firm age, and assets tangibility as control variables. Financial leverage served as a dependent variable, while the other used as the independent variable. The study used financial leverage in three forms: short term financial leverage measured as short-term debt to total assets ratio, long term financial leverage measured as long-term debt to total assets ratio, and total financial leverage measure as total debt to assets ratio.

In the Nepalese context, banks are the major institutions of financial system which accounted for more than 70% of the total assets of all the financial institutions (Poudel, 2005). The performance of banks with lower leverage and higher capital adequacy ratio is found to be more efficient and bank loans seem to be more highly valued than alternative bank outputs (Neupane, 2013). Joshi (2013) found that liquidity and bank size are positively related to a bank's performance.

The objective of the study was to assess the impact of financial leverage on bank's performance in Nepalese commercial banks. More specifically, it examined the impact of debt to total assets and debt to equity ratio on performance of Nepalese commercial banks measured by net interest margin, return on assets, and return on equity. The remainder of this paper is organized as follows: Section two describes the sample, data, and methodology. Section three presents the

empirical results and the final section draws conclusions and discusses the implications of the study findings, return on assets (ROA), return on equity (ROE) and net interest margin (NIM) of Nepalese commercial banks.

### **Review of Literature**

Salim and Yadav (2012) found that return on assets, return on equity, and earnings per share had a negative relationship with short-long-term debt, and total debt. The study showed that Tobin's Q had a significant positive relationship with the performance of firms. The study found that the relationship between financial leverage and firm performance measures was negative. A negative relationship between financial leverage and firm performance for other one-country samples was observed for Nigeria (Onaolapo & Kajola, 2010) and India (Majumdar & Chhibber, 1999) with profitability used as a performance measure. In the case of 10 developing countries (India, Pakistan, Thailand, Malaysia, Turkey, Zimbabwe, Mexico, Brazil, Jordan, and South Korea), the negative relationship between the financial leverage and firm performance measures was also found (Booth et al., 2001).

Iqbal and Usman (2018) argued that there was the large impact of financial leverage on performance of financial institutions of Pakistan during 2011 to 2015. Financial leverage was proxied by debt-to-equity ratio, solvency ratio (debt ratio), and equity ratio. Return on assets (ROA) and return on equity (ROE) were used as the performance indicators. Descriptive statistics, correlation and multiple regression were employed to



analyse the data. The result showed negative or insignificant impact of financial leverage on ROE, but positive or significant impact on ROA. The theme of review was the impact of leverage in performance was positive when debt was less than the equity in total financing.

A study found that profitability was negatively associated with leverage (Poyry & Maury, 2009). In the study the relationship between ownership structures and capital structures was explored. Joshua (2005) investigated the relationship between leverage and performance of listed companies on the Ghana stock exchange during 5 years period. The study showed that there was a positive relationship between the ratios of short-term debt to total asset and ROE, and a negative relationship between the ratios of long-term debt to total assets and ROE. The research further found a positive association between the ratio of total debt to total assets and return on equity. This study was consistent with the findings of Joshau (2007) which found that the effect of debt policy on the performance of the small and medium-sized enterprise in Ghana and South Africa suggested that capital structure especially long-term and total debt ratio negatively affect the performance of SMEs.

Kyereboah-Coleman (2007) investigated the impact of leverage on the performance of microfinance institutions in sub-Saharan Africa. Most of the microfinance institutes financed their operation with long-term debt as compared to short-term debt and they usually employed high leverage. The study found that high leverage firms performed better to deal with risk and they enjoyed

economies of scale. Ebai (2009) examined the impact of leverage on firm performance in Egypt which was considered as an emerging or transitional economy of the period 1997-2005. The research showed that capital leverage had weak to no impact on a firm's performance. Richard (2004) found that the amount of debt is positively related to the percentage of firms' leverage.

Graham (2000) found that all highly profitable firms showed their debt level low as it had a negative relationship between debt ratio and performance of the firm. Ferati (2012) took short term debts and long-term debts as independent variables and firm's performance as the dependent variable; and found a negative correlation of long-term debts with financial performance and positive correlation between short term debts with the financial performance of the company. Abbas (2012) displayed negative and inconsistent relationship between debts and financial performance. Khan (2012) found a negative and inconsistent relationship between two leverage and performance. Mesquita (2003) showed that the rate of return with short-term held an inverse relationship with long-term debt and equity. Ceasar (2003) and Hall (2004) examined a negative connection among profitability of firms with an elongated term of debts and short-term debts. Amsaven (2009) found that there is a negative relation between leverage and a firm's performance.

Sudan (2021) revealed that debt to assets ratio, long term debt ratio, debt to equity ratio, interest coverage ratio, and liquidity ratio had a positive relationship with return on assets, net profit margin,

and earning per share. But the board size and Tobin's q had a negative relationship with return on assets during 2011 -2017.

Destar (2020) showed that Debt Ratio (DR) had a negative and so insignificant effect on banks' performance measured by Return on Assets (ROA) and Return on Equity (ROE); while Debt Equity Ratio (DER) and Interest Coverage Ratio (ICR) had significant positive effect on banks' performance measured by Return on Assets (ROA) and Return on Equity (ROE) during 2008-2017.

Many studies in Nepal and other countries have been conducted to measure the relationship between bank leverage and performance (profitability). But most of them had measured linear relationship. In Nepal, all the studies have been conducted to investigate the linear relationship. Very few studies have investigated nonlinear relation. Thus, this study attempts to investigate linear and nonlinear relation between bank's leverage and performance in Nepalese context.

## **Method**

### **Research Design**

This study was purely quantitative; so, it was guided by positivist research philosophy. Because of the purely quantitative nature of the study, it applied descriptive, correlational, and causal-comparative research designs to deal with the issues associated with relationship between bank size and performance. The descriptive research design was used to summarize the study variables. It was useful to know the status of variables and explain the variables that are present at a given situation. The fundamental premise

behind this approach was that the variables and problems had already been identified by the investigation.

The link or relationship between two variables was examined using a correlational study design. To determine the direction, amount, and kind of link, the study first determined if the variables were associated or not. According to Kothari (2004), variables may be related in the same direction, in the opposite direction, or not at all. Investigating potential cause and effect relationships between the variables is the goal of causal-comparative study design. It assesses the current effects of one or more variables on another variable. The "ex-post facto research design" was also used. It is the kind of design where the independent variable(s) have already happened and where the investigation begins with the observation of a dependent variable before observing the independent variable(s) or variables in retrospect for their potential relationship (Kerlinger, 1983). This methodology has also been used in this work to quantify the potential causal connections between several dependent and independent variables. More specifically, the study looks at the connections of debt ratio, debt to equity ratio, and with net interest margin, return on assets and return on equity (measures of bank performance) respectively.

### **Population, Sample, Nature, and Source of Data**

The population of this study was twenty-one commercial banks running currently in Nepal and the sample size was twenty commercial banks excluding Rastriya Banijya Bank since it is not listed in stock exchange. The data were

secondary, quantitative and hand collected from the annual reports of the banks and the data covered ten years' period from 2012/13 to 2020/21 leading to 200 observations.

**Variables Selection**

The study has sought to explore the relationship between independent variable (debt ratio, DR & debt equity ratio, DER) and the dependent variables (net interest margin, NIM, return on assets, ROA, & return on equity, ROE). Bank performance was measured by ROA, NIM and ROE. These variables are the indicators of bank profitability and DR and DER are the indicators of leverage. Many studies had used these indicators as the proxies of firm performance and leverage (Shehzad, De Haan & Scholtens, 2013; Neves, Proença, & Dias, 2020; Islam & Nishiyama, 2016).

**Methods of the Data Analysis**

This research has used quantitative design due to quantitative nature of the data. Twenty-one commercial banks were the population and twenty commercial banks were taken as sample based on the availability of secondary data. The data were secondary and quantitative, and they were hand collected from annual reports of the respective banks. Descriptive statistics, correlation analysis, simple and multiple linear regression analysis were applied to analyze the data.

**Model Specification**

The econometric method was applied in the study to investigate the relationship of financial leverage with performance of commercial banks. The performance of commercial banks was measured by net interest margin, return on assets and return on equity. The econometric model was:

$$\text{Performance} = f(\text{leverage})$$

The specific models were:

- $$\text{NIM}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DR}_{it} + b_2\text{DR}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DR}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$
- $$\text{NIM}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DER}_{it} + b_2\text{DER}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DER}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$
- $$\text{ROA}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DR}_{it} + b_2\text{DR}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DR}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$
- $$\text{ROA}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DER}_{it} + b_2\text{DER}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DER}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$
- $$\text{ROE}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DR}_{it} + b_2\text{DR}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DR}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$
- $$\text{ROE}_{it} = a + b_1\text{DER}_{it} + b_2\text{DER}_{it}^2 + b_3\text{DER}_{it}^3 + e_{it} \dots \dots \dots i$$

Where:

$\text{ROE}_{it}$  = return on equity, measured as net profit after taxes divided by yearend total equity of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{NIM}_{it}$  = net interest margin, measured as net interest income divided by yearend total assets of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$ROA_{it}$  = return on assets, measured as net profit after taxes divided by yearend total assets of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$DR_{it}$  = debt ratio, measured as total debt divided by yearend total assets of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$DER_{it}$  = debt equity ratio, measured as total debt divided by yearend total equity of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$e_i$  = Error term of the Model.

**Results and Discussion**

**Descriptive Statistics**

The descriptive statistics applied in this study included the number of observations, minimum values, maximum values, mean values, and standard deviations of the variables under

investigation. Descriptive statistics provide information in summarised and meaningful form, which is usually easier for interpretation and understand. Table 1 shows the descriptive statistics of dependent and independent variables during the study period.

**Table 1**

*Summary Statistics of Study Variables*

Variables	N	Minimum	Maximum	Mean	Std. Dev
DR	200	0.00	99.35	88.2314	8.74678
DER	200	0.00	15355.37	948.2445	1062.73508
ROA	198	0.09	10.33	1.5869	0.83919
ROE	198	0.89	74.62	14.8549	7.01457
NIM	200	0.28	34.65	3.2972	2.34826

Table 1 shows that the average net interest margin was 3.2972 and standard deviation 2.34826 with minimum 0.28 to maximum 34.65. The average return on assets was 1.5466 percent and 0.83919 percent standard deviation with the minimum ROA 0.09 percent to maximum ROA 10.33 percent. The mean of debt ratio is 88.3214 percent and standard deviation 8.74678 percent with minimum value of 0

percent and maximum value of 99.35 percent. Debt to equity ratio ranges 0.00 percent to 15355.37 percent with average 948.2445 percent and standard deviation 1062.73508. The return on equity has maximum value of 74.62 percent and minimum value of 0.89 percent with the average value of 14.8549 percent and standard deviation 7.01457 percent during the study period.

**Table 2***Correlation Between Study Variables*

Variables	DR	DER	ROA	ROE	NIM
DR	1.000				
DER	1.000**	1.000			
ROA	-.323**	-.323**	1.000		
ROE	.456**	.456**	.611**	1.000	
NIM	-.208**	-.208**	.630**	.357**	1.000

*Note.* \*\* indicates correlation is significant at 0.01 level and \* indicates correlation is significant at 0.05 level.

In this correlation table, net interest margin, return on assets and return on equity are the dependent variables and debt ratio and debt to equity ratio are independent variables. It showed that the

net interest margin and return on assets had negative relation with debt ratio and debt to equity ratio and positive relation with the rest dependent variables.

**Table 3***Regression of Net Interest Margin on Debt Ratio*

Model	Constant	DR	DR <sup>2</sup>	DR <sup>3</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	24.5	-0.24 (0.000)	-	-	125	38.40	1.84
Quadratic	35.4	-0.58 (0.000)	0.002 (0.0000)		68	40.10	1.82

Table 3 shows the relationship between debt ratio and net interest margin. The coefficients of linear and quadratic models were significant. The value of adjusted R-square of quadratic model was higher than the linear model; so, it is concluded that the relationship between net

interest margin and debt ratio was nonlinear. It indicated that there is threshold value of debt ratio in Nepalese commercial banking that maximizes the net interest margin. Our finding supports prior study of Poyry and Maury (2009).

**Table 4**

*Regression on Net Interest Margin on Debt-to-equity Ratio.*

Model	Constant	DER	DER <sup>2</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	3.5	0.0 (0.16)	-	1.93 (0.17)	0.5	2.34
Quadratic	5.54	-0.003 (0.000)	1.635E-7 (0.000)	8.68 (0.000)	7.2	2.26

Table 4 shows the relationship between debt-to-equity ratio and net interest margin. The coefficient of linear model was not significant; but the coefficient of quadratic model was significant. So, the relationship between net interest margin and debt to equity ratio

was nonlinear. It indicated that there is lower limit value of debt-to-equity ratio in Nepalese commercial bank that maximizes the net interest margin. Our finding supports prior study of Poyry and Maury (2009).

**Table 5**

*Regression of Return on Assets on Debt Ratio*

Model	Constant	DR	DR <sup>2</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	9.76	-0.093 (0.000)	-	111.77 (0.000)	36.6	0.74
Quadratic	8.59	-0.56 (0.314)	0.000 (0.500)	58	36.4	0.74

Table 5 shows the relationship between debt ratio and return on assets. The coefficient of linear model was significant but the coefficient of quadratic model was not significant. The relationship between debt ratio and return on assets was

linear. It showed the inverse relation between debt ratio and return on assets. This finding was consistent with the findings of Amsaven (2009) and Khan (2012).

**Table 6**

*Regression of Return on Assets on Debt-to-equity Ratio*

Model	Constant	DER	DER <sup>2</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	1.73	0.00 (0.008)	-	7.13 (0.000)	3	0.83
Quadratic	2.68	-0.001 (0.000)	7.756E-8 (0.000)	18.41	15	0.77

Table 6 shows the relationship between return on assets on debt-to-equity ratio. The coefficient of each model was significant. The value of adjusted R-square of quadratic model was higher than the

linear model. So, the relation between return on assets and debt to equity ratio was nonlinear. This finding was not consistent with Salim and Yadav (2012).

**Table 7**

*Regression of Return on Equity on Debt-to-equity Ratio*

Model	Constant	DER	DER <sup>2</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	10.64	0.004 (0.000)	-	168.88 (0.000)	46	5.15
Quadratic	6.32	0.01 (0.000)	- 3.495E7 (0.000)	97.03 (0.000)	49.4	4.99

The regression results showed the relation between return on equity and debt to equity ratio. The coefficient of each model was significant. The value of adjusted R-square of quadratic model was higher than that of linear model. So, the

relation between return on equity and debt to equity ratio was non-linear. This showed a positive relationship between return on equity and debt to equity ratio. This finding was consistent with Desta (2020).

**Table 8***Regression of Return on Equity on Debt Ratio*

Model	Constant	DR	DR <sup>2</sup>	F-Value	AdjR <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	-4.78	0.22 (0.000)	-	16.47 (0.000)	7.3	6.75
Quadratic	12.28	-70 (0.000)	0.008 (0.000)	19.02 (0.000)	15.5	6.45

Table 8 shows the relationship between return on equity and debt ratio. It had the negative and significant effect on banks performance measure by return on equity. Our findings match with the study of Graham (2000).

### Conclusion

In this study, we empirically examined the impact of financial leverage on performance of Nepalese commercial banks. We applied the recently published data of twenty commercial banks of Nepal. The results show nonlinear relation between NIM and DR. It indicates that there is an optimal level of DR that maximizes NIM of the bank. The

relationship between NIM and DER is also found nonlinear. The relation between DR and ROA is negative and linear which indicates inverse relation between ROA and DR. The relation of ROE with DER and DR are also found nonlinear. The above results indicate that the impact of bank leverage on NIM, ROA and ROE are nonlinear. Therefore, the bank should pay attention while choosing the level of leverage. This study was conducted using only bank's data and data were analysed using ordinary least square estimate regression model. The inclusion of other nonbank firms and data analysis using other models of estimation may produce more reliable and valid results.

### References

- Baker, S. (1973). Risk leverage and profitability: An industry analysis. *Review of Economics and Statistics*, 55(4); 503-507.
- Berger, A. N., & Di Patti, E. B. (2006). Capital structure and firm performance: A new approach to testing agency theory and an application to the banking industry. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 30(4), 1065–1102.
- Booth, L., Aivazian, V., Kunt, A. D., & Maksimovic, V. (2001). Capital structures in developing countries. *The Journal of Finance*, 56(1), 87–130.



- Chandrakumar, M. S., & Govinda, S. P. (2010). Leverage: An analysis and its impact on profitability with reference to selected cement companies in India. *European Journal of Economics, Finance and Administrative Sciences*, 27(1), 53-75.
- Ebaid, I. E. S. (2009). The impact of capital-structure choice on firm performance: Empirical evidence from Egypt. *The Journal of Risk Finance*, 10(5), 477-487.
- Ezeoha, A. E. (2008). Firm size and corporate financial leverage choice in a developing economy: Evidence from Nigeria. *The Journal of Risk Finance*, 30, 351-364.
- Iavorskyi, M. (2013). The impact of capital structure on firm performance: Evidence from Ukraine [MA thesis]. Kyiv School of Economics.
- Joshua, A. (2005). The effect of capital structure on profitability: An empirical analysis of listed firms in Ghana. *The Journal of Risk Finance*, 6(5), 438-445.
- Joshua, A. (2007). Debt policy and performance of SMEs: Evidence from Ghanaian and South Africa firms. *The Journal of Risk Finance*, 8(4), 364-379.
- Kyereboah-Coleman, A. (2007). Impact of capital structure on the performance of micro-finance institutions. *The Journal of Risk Finance*, 8(1), 56-71.
- Lang, L., Ofek, E., & Stulz, R. (1996). Leverage, investment, and firm growth. *Journal of Financial Economics*, 40(1), 3-29.
- Majumdar, S. K., & Chhibbe, P. (1999). Capital structure and performance: Evidence from a transition economy on an aspect of corporate governance. *Public Choice*, 98(3), 287-305.
- Mandelker, G. N., & Rhee, S. G. (1984). The impact of the degree of operating and financial leverage on systematic risk of common stock. *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, 30, 45-57.
- Mangalam, S. C., & Govindasamy, P. (2010). Leverage: An analysis and its impact on profitability with reference to selected cement companies in India. *Journal of Economics, Finance and Administrative Science*, 27(1), 50-75.
- Poyry, S., & Maury, B. (2009). Influential ownership and capital structure. *Working paper series*. Hanker School of Economics (Helsinki, Finland). 31(5), 311-324.
- Salim, M., & Yadav, R. (2012). Capital structure and firm performance: Evidence from Malaysian listed companies. *Social and Behavioural Sciences*, 65, 156-166.
- Sheel, A. (1994). Determinants of capital structure choice and empirics on leverage behaviour: A comparative analysis of hotel and manufacturing firms. *Hospitality Research Journal*, 17, 3-16.

## **Integrating Tharu Indigenous Culture in English Language Teaching: An Action Research<sup>1</sup>**

Dadhiram Dahal

Instructor at Department of English, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari, Sunsari  
email: [ramdahalsundarpur@gmail.com](mailto:ramdahalsundarpur@gmail.com)

### **Abstract**

The effect of integrating local (indigenous) culture into the course of English language teaching has not been explored much in Nepal. This study aims to investigate the Tharu indigenous festival 'Joorshital' in its socio-cultural aspects and integrates the festival into an English language course by designing activities relating to teaching and learning English inside and outside the classroom. This study used qualitative method to collect and analyze the data. The study took 30 students of Grade 5 from a secondary school in Itahari, Sunsari as the subjects for the study. The surveys among the students and parents before and after the implementation of the action research, students' and parents' written comments, and student observation were employed to record the changes in motivation and enthusiasm for learning English during a one-year study period. The data resources included the Tharu community, Tharu students, Tharu social leaders and elderly people, students' prior knowledge of 'Joorshital', online resources, and journal articles. The data were collected through field visits, questionnaires, interviews, and observation. The students were very enthusiastic and active in cross-cultural activities. They became more motivated, interactive, and participatory in learning English when the indigenous cultural contents were integrated into the course. Their level of interest increased; and they enjoyed the process thoroughly. Such studies are very beneficial to the teachers to promote cross-cultural awareness among themselves and the students, to help the indigenous culture to preserve, and to motivate them in English learning through interactive engagements.

*Keywords:* cross-cultural understanding, indigenous culture, interactive learning, Tharu festivals

### **Introduction**

Cultural diversity is a reality in Nepalese classrooms. Students come from heterogeneous backgrounds embedded with diverse cultural entities. They have their own social and cultural manners and behaviors which, most of the time, tend to confront the target language learning. This heterogeneity is a challenge to English

language teaching and learning. There are many difficulties and obstructions among the students in the learning process due to these cultural interferences. These interferences cause cultural gaps. The school curriculum focuses on only the target language cultures which broaden this gap between student diversity and the curriculum input.

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, June 16  
Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 22  
Accepted on 2023, July 29

This action research was designed to investigate and explore the Tharu cultural festival 'Joorshital' and its integration into the course in English language teaching for the purpose of enhancing students' cultural awareness and their motivation and engagement. Hence, the researcher observed whether the above-mentioned gap could be fulfilled through the integration of cultural content or not. Accordingly, it is significant to discuss the meaning and definition of the indigenous culture and Tharu indigenous community in this section further.

Indigenous people are those who have a distinct cultural and socio-ethnic identity that mutually shares the natural resources and the ancestral ties to the land they have owned or where they occupy and live. They are the practitioners and inheritors of distinctive cultures and a way of relating to the surroundings and the people (<https://www.un.org>). They have their own language and lifestyle. Their members are generally considered to be descendants of people who had previously inhabited a certain geographic area when new conquerors from different cultures or ethnic origins arrived there (UN, 2017). Indigenous people are also called 'Cultural Communities'. They are homogenous societies identified by self-aspiration and ascription by others, who have continuously lived as an organized community, sharing common bonds of language, customs, traditions, and other distinctive cultural traits (*Republic Act 8371, IPRA 1997*). In this regard, Tharu people are the indigenous people in Nepal with their own cultural and linguistic identities. Moreover, the Tharu indigenous group is one of the oldest and largest

indigenous people groups in Nepal (Fornanito et. al., 2009).

To understand the diversity of Nepal and the significance of the Tharu cultural studies, it is desirable to present and discuss the current statistical scenario of Nepal's ethnicity and population in a nutshell. *The constitution of Nepal* (2072BS) stated that Nepal is a multi-ethnic, multi-linguistic, multicultural, and multi-religious country. According to the latest data provided by the Nepal Government, Department of Statistics (2023), the total number of castes in Nepal is 142 and the languages spoken are 124. Among these ethnic groups, the caste in top ten positions are: Chhetri (16.45%), Brahmin (11.29%), Magar (6.9%), Tharu (6.2%), Tamang (5.62%), Biswakarma (5.04%), Musalman (4.86%), Newar (4.6%), Yadav (4.21%), and Rai (2.2%).

The data presents Tharu people in the fourth position in the number. They occupy 6.2 percent of the total population of Nepal. To put Tharu people in the brief spectrum, they are an ethnic group indigenous to the Terai in southern Nepal. To be specific, they occupy 4.1 percent of the total population in Koshi Province. To be more specific to Itahari sub-metropolitan city, Tharu people are the largest community in number. They occupy 19.41 percent of the total population here (population by caste, 2021 census). They are rich in their culture and customs. They live a rural and traditional life. The name 'Itahari' itself is derived from the Tharu language (Timalsina, 2011). To honor the Tharu caste, their indigenous identity, and typical cultures, Itahari sub-metropolitan city has declared

the Tharu ethnic group as the 'First Citizen' of Itahari.

The data above show that the Tharu ethnic group is remarkable in number in Nepal and is the largest ethnic group in Itahari. And the fact is obvious that the Tharu students make a prominent number in the classes at schools there. Not only the Tharu students but also the students of other ethnicities are not much interactive and aware of the cross-cultural content. The students are indifferent towards the indigenous cultures and they do not pay due attention to the cultural learning. There can be specific reasons behind this; but a lack of integrating cultural content into the course can be the one. So, this study integrates 'Joorshital', an indigenous Tharu festival, into the course of English language teaching and learning to observe whether the integration of indigenous cultural content enhances students' cultural awareness as well as motivation and engagement in learning or not. The research question, in this background, is: How can the integration of indigenous culture enhance cultural awareness, and English language learning?

### **Review of Literature**

The integration and inclusion of local indigenous cultural content in the curriculum have long been in discourse and application in the field of teaching English. The approaches such as culturally responsive teaching and cross-cultural pedagogy provide an outline and theoretical framework as well as practical guidelines. Hence, integrating indigenous culture into the course as the local curriculum can be a good solution. Various previous studies have shown that the role of

indigenous culture in language teaching is positive and encouraging. The scholars have highlighted the importance of integrating local cultures into the course of English language teaching.

In the school-based curriculum, learners' local culture is incorporated in ELT as it can facilitate them to acquire the target language. Post and Rathet (1996) claimed that students' familiarity with the content of the targeted texts in reference to their prior experience achieved in their daily lives affected their understanding of the target language. In support of this claim, Khan (2016) found that incorporating the local culture in teaching the English language was a good strategy for cross-cultural understanding. Mahardika (2018) stated that culturally familiar materials are beneficial since these local cultural materials help students learn English better. Familiarity with the cultural material lessened foreign nuances and reduced students' stress levels while learning. These scholars' claims affirm that integrating indigenous culture into English language teaching is an aid to enhance students' achievements.

Susan C. Barfield and Joëlle Uzarski (2009) further, mentioned in their article that integrating local indigenous culture into English language learning not only educated learners about indigenous people in their own countries and throughout the world; it also made learning English more relevant for indigenous students in those classrooms (2009). Including indigenous cultures in teaching English is becoming more important and common in many parts of the world. In Europe, the study of American indigenous languages and cultures are being studied at

the Latin America Institute at the Free University of Berlin, and the Department of Indigenous Languages and Cultures at the University of Leyden in Holland. The approach to basic education offered by the *World Conference on Education for All* (2000) presented another insight into the world of teaching and learning, focusing on the philosophy of considering the unique needs and 'culture of each community'. In this regard, it can be argued that culturally responsive pedagogy encourages the integration of indigenous culture into the course. Hence, it is desirable to discuss further culturally responsive pedagogy in brief.

Culturally responsive pedagogy is a student-centered approach to teaching that includes cultural references and recognizes the importance of students' cultural backgrounds and experiences in all aspects of learning (Ladson-Billings, 1995). The approach is meant to promote the engagement, enrichment, and achievement of all students by embracing learners' diversity, identifying and nurturing students' cultural strengths, and validating students' lived experiences and their place in the world (Villegas & Lucas, 2007). Culturally responsive pedagogy can be materialized by teachers who are committed to cultural competence, establish high expectations, and position themselves as both facilitators and learners. Teachers who utilize Cultural Responsive Teaching practices value students' cultural and linguistic resources and view this knowledge as capital to build upon rather than as a barrier to learning. These teachers use this capital (i.e. personal experiences and interests) as the basis for instructional connections to facilitate student learning

and development. Teachers who use CRT apply interactive, and collaborative teaching methods, strategies, and ways of interacting that support students' cultural, linguistic, and racial experiences; and that integrate the methods with evidence-based practices (EBPs, Harlin & Souto-Manning, 2009; Hersi & Watkinson, 2012; Nieto et al., 2008; Santamaria, 2009).

The literature reviewed above brings together the various scholars' affirmations and claims for integrating indigenous/local cultures into the teaching and learning of the English language.

### **Method**

This section describes the subjects under study, and how they were selected for inclusion in this study. In addition, the instruments and tools used to collect information are discussed. Data collection and analysis procedures are also presented. This section concludes with some of the methodological limitations.

### **Research Design**

The study employed a hybrid methodology using sequential mixed methods. Creswell (2003) has described mixed methodology as one in which the researcher collects, analyzes, and integrates both quantitative and qualitative data in a single study or in multiple studies in a sustained program of inquiry. It can be conceptualized as combining quantitative and qualitative research in a concurrent, sequential, conversion, or parallel way.

### **Sample Selection and Description of Participants**

The subjects for this study were students of the junior class (Grade 5) at a

privately funded secondary level school in Itahari, Sunsari. The total number of participants was 30. They were selected because their curiosity level was found to be high to new cross-cultural activities and

practices, their course curriculum was implicitly connected with the objectivity of the research study, and some students in these classes came from the targeted Tharu community.

**Table 1**

*Research Participants*

	Male	Female	Total
Grade 5	17	13	30

**Materials/Instruments**

The researcher applied various instruments and materials in the process of this action research. The main instruments were background study, literature, and journals, students’ works and classroom artifacts: students’ reading, students’ writings, drawings, handicrafts, celebration, cultural dress exhibition, songs, food items, interviews, and surveys.

**Procedure**

The implementation of the cross-cultural project occurred in two distinct phases:

Phase 1: Sampling, Consent, and Orientation

Firstly, the participants were selected for the study. The consent was taken from the parents for the process. Thereafter, the participants were given an orientation about multiculturalism and inclusiveness shedding light on ‘Joorshital’ in particular.

Phase 2: Action and Activities in Implementation

During the intervention, the subjects were engaged in various

activities. Firstly, they were instructed by a Tharu expert about the festival. Secondly, they were engaged in community visits to meet and observe the Tharu people and houses. Thirdly, they were engaged in the festival celebration with food and clothes of that community. Focus group discussions and observations were carried out among each group of students, their parents, and teachers as part of the process. Teachers, parents, and students participated in research activities such as conducting dialogue conferences, workshops, and formal and informal talks during the intervention. Furthermore, the actions were executed through various classroom activities like quizzes, drawing, writing essays, and poetry sessions relating them to the festival. The goal of the study was to observe the development of inquiring, knowledgeable and caring young people who help to create a better and more peaceful world through cross-cultural understanding and respect.

In a nutshell, in the course of the project implementation, the following activities were executed by the students and the teachers in the classroom and the community.

- A discussion on the 'Joorshital' festival by a Tharu community leader
- Meeting local Tharu people with questionnaires and interviewing them
- Panel discussion program inviting Tharu cultural experts
- Learning about local festivals of ethnic communities in Pakistan, Afghanistan, and Bangladesh for an international dimension
- Celebrating the 'Joorshital' festival with related food and attire at school
- Essay and quiz competitions with evaluation tools
- Oratory competition
- Drawing competition and photo fair
- Collaboration with partner schools and exchange of activities between them

### **Limitations**

This study collected data from the students selected from a big, heterogeneous group. There was no measure of validity or reliability because the survey was created specifically for this study.

### **Results**

The study was undertaken with various activities as per the objectives. The theories of culturally responsive teaching and cross-cultural pedagogy set the path for the objective analysis. The Tharu festival 'Joorshital' was taken as the resource and

material for the study. The students of grade 5 studying in a privately funded English medium school located at Itahari, Sunsari, were the subjects through whom the activities were executed. The students exhibited higher level of enthusiasm and curiosity while the activities were implemented. The close observation of the student behavior and achievement before the project implementation and the time while the activities were being carried on, the distinctly different perceptions could be identified in their attitude and understanding. The major findings are summarized in the following paragraphs.

Students' engagement in various activities relating to the festival 'Joorshital' remarkably enhanced their curiosity and motivation towards it. They asked several questions about the festival that most of them had never heard before. Even Tharu students did not have authentic knowledge of the festival 'Joorshital'. The students of other ethnic backgrounds also showed much interest in it. Their respect for the Tharu indigenous festival and culture increased. 'Joorshital' became the catchy term for them, and they buzzed about it in their peer groups for a long time. The sharing of the Tharu cultural content on social media increased; and the teachers also shared and commented on the matter of 'Joorshital' on social media.

**Table 2**

*Students' Awareness about 'Joorshital'*

The number of students who knew about 'Joorshital' before	The number of students who knew about 'Joorshital' after
3	30

The next achievement of the interaction was that the integration of the Tharu indigenous festival 'Joorshital' with their language learning program provided the students with an encouraging environment for using authentic language. They got exposed to genuine and contextualized language use. The participants could easily engage and interact with the native Tharu people improving their listening and speaking skills both in local language and target language by engaging themselves in conversations, performances, and activities.

The participants' opportunities to participate and engage in the interview, interaction, and celebration of the festival 'Joorshital' provided a unique platform for immersing themselves in indigenous culture. They got engaged in dance, music, food, storytelling, and other traditional practices and rituals of the festival which helped to deepen their understanding of the customs and beliefs of the Tharu community. As a result, their cultural competence was duly enhanced.

The contextualized and authentic environment created by the celebratory nature of the cultural festival significantly enhanced student motivation and engagement. Learning became more pleasant, enjoyable, and spontaneous

fostering a more positive learning environment.

Engaging with indigenous communities through festivals promoted intercultural understanding and empathy. Students gained insight into different communities' views, values, and perspectives, contributing to their development as culturally sensitive and globally aware individuals.

The participants' engagement and interaction with the local Tharu people in the community, and the discussion and sharing that took place in their classroom among themselves offered an opportunity to practice various language functions. They learned to make comparisons, give descriptions, and express preferences while participating in the activities related to the festival which ultimately helped to improve their language proficiency.

The indigenous festival provided sets of authentic materials, such as traditional songs, stories, and artifacts. These resources could be used to develop authentic and culturally relevant language learning materials, fostering a deeper connection between language and culture.

Indigenous cultural festivals such as 'Joorshital' helped to involve the broader community, creating opportunities for students to interact with native indigenous people outside the



classroom. This engagement promoted real-life language use and encouraged the learners to apply their language skills in authentic social contexts.

In the course of intervention, the participants got an opportunity to expose themselves in to the real-life situation, and interactive language use which benefitted them in two ways: First, they learnt and assimilated with the Tharu culture and festivals; and second, they used English language as the medium of

communication when they engaged in pedagogical activities such as speech, essay writing, international collaboration and presentations. Consequently, they grew more tolerant to each-other culturally, and they developed language competency as well.

Thirty students were engaged in pedagogical activities such as oratory, essay writing, and drawing competition. Few samples are presented for evidence here.

Figure 1

Students in Essay Writing Competition

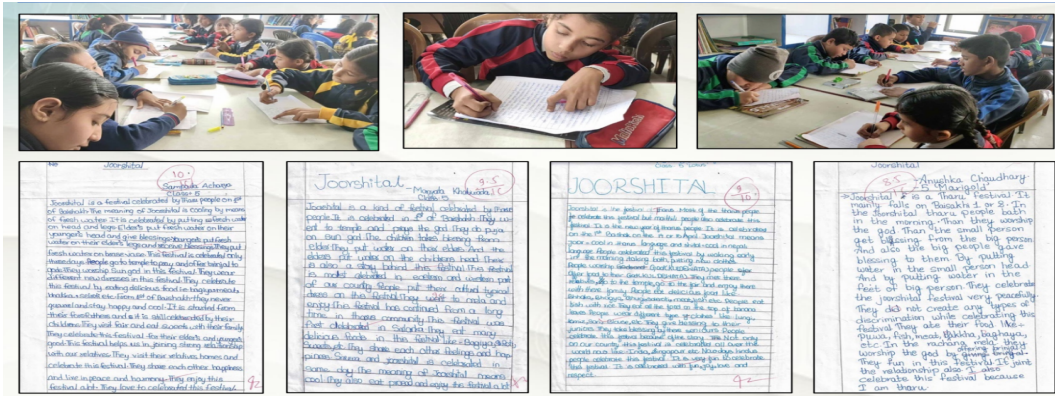


Figure 2

Students Participating in Drawing Competition



Figure 3

Parents' and Visitors' Feedback

PARENT		VISITOR	
<b>ISA Parent/ Guardian Activity Evaluation Form</b>		<b>ISA Visitor Evaluation Form</b>	
No of activity	Title of activity	No of activity	Title of activity
	जोरशितल पर्व		जोरशितल
Your name		Your name	
	उत्तर गंग तामाङ		राम शर्मा, प्रह
Your child's name			
	आर्यन तामाङ		
Class			
	पाच (५)		
Please comment on the impact this activity has had on your child and in your local community.		Please comment on the impact this activity has had on the pupils involved.	
यो विद्यालयमा अत्यन्त राम्रो लाग्यो। यसले विद्यार्थीहरूमा जा कुनै पनि विषयमा बारेमा खोजी पढी अहिलेसम्मको ज्ञानको विकास गरेको पाइ। भैरो नानी कमा लोकले र जाडले खुसीको थियो। अहिले इन्ट्रि विद्यार्थी र मल्लमा लोकोला कुनै राख्न पनि सिकाउने भएछ।		मलाई लाग्छ यो विद्यालयले विद्यार्थीहरूमा धेरै राम्रो शिक्षात्मक प्रभाव पारेको छ। इन्ट्रिहरूमा अहिले जाडको जाडको बारेमा छिट्टो र संगठन गरेको छ। विद्यार्थीहरू जोरशितल भिरो कलापत्रा एकदमै सक्रिय भएर सहभागिता भएकी थिए।	
If you have been directly involved in this activity what impact did it have on you?		Please comment on the impact this activity has had on you.	
मलाई पनि जो जोरशितल विद्यालयमा एकदमै मन पर्यो आफ्नो व्यवहार राम्रो गरेको देख्दा धेरै खुसी लाग्यो र केन्द्रित बनेको बारेमा अहिले पनि धेरै विचार गरिरहेको छु।		म आफ्नो बारेमा अझै धेरै राम्रो विद्यालयले जोरशितल पर्वको बारेमा पनि धेरै जानकारी दिए। जोरशितल विद्यालयको लागि सहभागिता जनाएको मा धेरै गर्नु लागेको छ। म धेरै नै खुसी छु।	
Please comment on the impact this activity has had on the school generally.		Please comment on the impact this activity has had on the school generally.	
विद्यालयमा गेला प्रभावकारी शिक्षात्मक जाडको विद्यार्थीको मन को स्तर त अझै नै अझै विद्यालयको पनि सामाजिक रूपमा प्रविष्टा भएको। जोरशितल विद्यालयको लागि धेरै राम्रो भएको छ।		विद्यालयमा गेला प्रभावकारी शिक्षात्मक जाडको विद्यार्थीको मन को स्तर त अझै नै अझै विद्यालयको पनि सामाजिक रूपमा प्रविष्टा भएको। जोरशितल विद्यालयको लागि धेरै राम्रो भएको छ।	
Any other comments? You may like to mention how this activity can be improved in future		If you have any suggestions for how to improve this activity, please comment here.	
भैरो विचारमा यस्ता शैलीका शिक्षात्मक जाडको अहिले धेरै गरिनु राम्रो छ। जाडको लागि विद्यालयले अझै धेरै राम्रो पढाउनु पर्नेछ।		विद्यालयको लागि यस्ता जाडको अझै धेरै गरिनु राम्रो छ। जाडको लागि विद्यालयले अझै धेरै राम्रो पढाउनु पर्नेछ।	

Discussion

The findings of this study are somehow time and place specific which show a certain level of convergence and alignment to and from the literature I discussed above. First, talking about convergence, the integration of the indigenous Tharu festival ‘Joorshital’ helped to create a remarkably positive environment for questioning and interaction in the classroom and outside the classroom. The common attitude of the students towards the festival became significantly positive.

The students showed an optimum level of enthusiasm for the festival. Their respect for the Tharu culture was visibly enhanced. The students were deeply engaged in the festival celebration and community visit. They interacted with the Tharu elderly people discussing the origin of celebrating ‘Joorshital’ in their community. The students did not directly approach the community people rather they met them

with some fruits and sweets first; then they talked informally for a while; and finally they asked some relevant questions based on the festival. Thereafter, returning to the classroom, they prepared the journal of their visit. Then they were assigned an essay writing task which they performed with great motivation and energy.

The findings of this study also revealed certain important cultural issues of the Tharu community. Though they seemed to be proud of their culture, they also showed that the newer generation of their community is not much aware of their own festival. Most of the youths and adults did not exhibit their knowledge about ‘Joorshital’ comprehensively. The elderly people did not seem to be much interactive due to linguistic impediments though few Tharu leaders and teachers provided the detail of the festival to the students. In this regard, the most important the findings was the level of cultural awareness of the students of heterogeneous backgrounds.

They collected information about the festival through interviews and interaction with the Tharu community people and performed the celebration at school among themselves. Further, the Tharu expert's facilitation and interaction with the students deepened the students' knowledge of 'Joorshital' and 'Siruwa' festivals. Thereafter, the students' model celebration of the festival at school added more flavor and knowledge about the festival. They wore the Tharu typical dresses on that occasion and prepared food items like 'bagiya' and shared them as god's offerings among themselves. They could achieve the practical skills to celebrate the festival.

The empirical knowledge the students gained engaging themselves in this festival was reflected in various pedagogical activities in English language classes. In doing so, their awareness towards the Tharu culture became stronger and intact. The students were engaged in essay writing and quiz program which showed their deepened knowledge of the Tharu culture. The discussion sessions and talk program among the students about the festival helped to enhance their interpersonal skills such as listening, turn-taking, intervening, collaborating, and group work. The medium of instruction while students' presentation and classroom discussions were English and the students who were submissive and backward in questioning and public speaking became more vocal and confident after the implementation of the projects. They improved not only their vocabulary but also their sentence structures and meaning making capabilities.

## **Conclusion**

The Tharu festival 'Joorshital' is an important cultural heritage of the Tharu community. It is an interesting festival with fun and merrymaking as well as a great message for the well-being of the community people. The study also infers that integrating indigenous/local culture, especially the festivals like 'Joorshital' is very effective in enhancing students' awareness about a particular indigenous culture. Most importantly, it helps students to become more motivated and interactive in the learning of English language inside and outside the classroom. Students' engagement and participation increase during the implementation of the activities. They love teaching content borrowed from cross-cultural and intercultural areas. At the same time, English teachers are encouraged to incorporate the local indigenous culture into the course of teaching English, especially at the elementary level because students come from different cultural backgrounds with different prior experiences and knowledge. In such heterogeneous classrooms, integrating local indigenous culture can facilitate target language learning. By integrating the local culture into the English language teaching and learning process, it is proved that students can have intercultural as well as cross-cultural awareness that facilitate them to cope with intercultural communication barriers. As a result, students are encouraged to achieve intercultural as well as cross-cultural competence and promote their own intercultural identities.

## Implications

The findings of the present study pointed out that the integration of local indigenous culture can be an effective tool for meaningful learning. This implied that

integration of local indigenous culture can ensure better teaching and learning experience. The students will be able to feel connected with the teaching in the class as they feel comfortable with the local indigenous cultural context.

## References

- Barfield, S. C., & Uzarski, J. (2009). Integrating indigenous cultures into English language teaching. *English Forum*, 47(1), 2-9.
- Frank, J. (2013). Raising cultural awareness in English language classrooms. *English Teaching Forum*, 51(4), 2-35.
- GON. (2023). *National population and housing census 2021*. Government of Nepal, Department of Statistics.
- Harlin, R., & Souto-Manning, M. (2009). Review of research: Educating Latino children: International perspectives and values in early education. *Childhood Education*, 85(3), 182-186.
- Hersi, A. A., & Watkinson, J. S. (2012). Supporting immigrant students in a newcomer high school: A case study. *Bilingual Research Journal*, 35(1), 98-111.
- Indigenous peoples rights act 1997 (Republic Act No. 8371 of 1997)*. Phillipines.
- Khan, I. A. (2016). Teachers perceptions of the significance of local culture in foreign language learning. *Journal of English Language and Literature*, 1(3), 65-70.
- Ladson-Billings, G. (1995). But that's just good teaching! The case for culturally relevant pedagogy. *Theory into Practice*, 34 (3), 159-165.
- Mahardika, G. A. W. (2018). Incorporating local culture in English teaching material for students. *SHS Web of Conferences* 42, 00080. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.1051/shsconf/20184200080>.
- Nieto, S., Bode, P., Kang, E., & Raible, J. (2008). Identity, community, and diversity: Rethorizing multicultural curriculum for the postmodern era. In F. Connelly, M. He, & J. Phillion (Eds.), *The SAGE handbook of curriculum and instruction* (pp. 176-198). Sage.
- Post, R., & Ilyse, R. (1996). On their own terms: Using student native culture as content in the EFL classroom. *English Teaching Forum*. Retrieved from <http://exchange.state.gov/forum/vols/vol34/no3/p12.htm>
- Santamaria, L. J. (2009). Culturally responsive differentiated instruction: Narrowing gaps between best pedagogical practices benefiting all learners. *The Teachers College Record*, 111(1), 212-247.

- Shrestha, K. (2016). The role of (local) culture in English language teaching. *NELTA Choutari*. 21(1/2), 54-60.
- The Constitution of Nepal, 2072BS.*
- The World Conference on Education for All, 2000.*
- Timalsina, R. (2011). *Development of literature in Itahari* [an unpublished mini-research report]. Itahari Research Center.
- UN. (2017). Who are indigenous peoples? *United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous Issues*. [http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session\\_factsheet1.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/5session_factsheet1.pdf)
- UN. (2018). Promoting inclusion through social protection. *Report on the World Social Situation 2018*. doi:10.18356/14642ccc-en <https://www.un.org/development/desa/indigenouspeoples/about-us.html>
- Villegas, A. M., & Lucas, T. (2007). The culturally responsive teacher. *Educational Leadership*, 64(6), 28- 33.

## **The Novel as an Interpretation of Life<sup>1</sup>**

Kabita Khadka

Instructor at Department of English, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email: *kindkabita@gmail.com*

### **Abstract**

The novel presents and captures the remarkable moments of human life presenting its different aspects even if it is called fiction. A novel, in this regard, interprets life in the form of plot, characters, costumes, and through many more things. This research paper aims at investigating how novels interpret human life through their presentation of characters, plot, language, design and the narratives centered on human societies. For this, the study has employed qualitative methodology, and data in the study were brought from secondary sources. Those secondary sources included different journal articles, books, novels, and other publications related to the novel as a literary genre. The major finding of the present study includes that novel has the specific power to portray different ups and downs of human life; it is an interpretation of human life; the novel works as a discourse of life; and it recaptures the spirit of time through different incidents.

*Keywords:* discourse, novel, spirit of time

### **Introduction**

The word novel has been derived to English from the Italian word *novella* which means new (Gillespie, 1967). The novel is one of the most powerful forms that emerged in all literatures of the world, particularly during the 19th and 20th centuries. It is a literary type of a certain length that presents a 'story' in the fictionalized form (Taylor, 1981). Although it is a stretched narrative, it is different from the short story and the genre called novelette as the extent of the novel covers a great range of characters, greater complications of the plot, and fuller development of its magnitude permits a greater variety of characters, the greater complication of the plot (or plots), fuller development of situation than the other

shorter genres (Abrams, 1998). The novel is often described as a "pocket theatre" that consists of not only the plots and characters but also costumes, scenery, and all the other accessories of drama without the need for actual representation on the stage (Crawford, 1895). Reeve and Runge (2007) defined the novel as a depiction of actual life and behaviors of the time in which it was written.

The novel is a narrative work of prose fiction that describes the story of particular experiences of a man over a considerable length (Watt, 2001). The inner feelings and thoughts which can be complex to conflicting ideas are particularly reconnoitered in the novel (Temmerman, 2014). Novels support freedom that is beyond the experimental

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, June 25  
Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 13  
Accepted on 2023, July 29

forms of scholarly research writing. Due to that freedom, it has the power of delivering how things are, might be, or can be, and it invents new ways of seeing as well (Beyes et al., 2019). Though the novel is specifically a work of fiction, many novels do knit the actual human antiquity (Groot, 2009). Therefore, the novel can be regarded as an effective means for the description of life which consists of elements like plot, character, dialogue, time of action, and criticism of life for the total cohesive effect to be reflected in it (James, 2011).

The novel is extended narrative fiction generally written in prose in the form of a book. It presents the holistic aspects of human life whereas a short story merely shows the particular aspects of life (Kirby, 2002). Similarly, the novel, the most artistic and democratic genre, presents a conflicting, contradictory, and diverse voice of the society, which is a powerful instrument to articulate philosophical, historical, social, cultural, and moral facets of life (Pearce & Littlejohn, 1997). Mostly, novels are committed to communicating the personal experiences of an individual crafting a complex representation of people from various walks of life as they live in. The novels explore the inner psyche, thoughts, feelings, and sentiments of an individual so as to reflect the complete picture of society. The most interesting aspect of writing a novel is to equally respect all voices of the people. Such space is less available in other genres of literature. As there are several characters, they truly have diverse knowledge, point of view, and thoughts, in contrast to poetry that is considered one of the most autocratic genre and has given the

honor to the almost dominant voice of the speaker.

On this background, this paper has tried to explore how novel represents human life in literature.

### **Method**

The primary objective of this study is to find out the ways a novel interprets human life. To carry out this, a qualitative method has been used. Secondary sources of data were consulted. The study has consulted previous studies to support the claim that is made in each theme. For it, different academic papers, websites, journal articles, and seminar papers have been studied. The study has brought the claims and arguments from the studies of Pearce and Littlejohn (1997), Kirby (2002), Carr (1986), Eder (2010), Cronin and Berger (2015), Abrams (1998), Albrecht (1954), Carroll (1987), Cuddon (2012), and Fedsova (2015).

Moreover, in the result and discussion section of the study, different themes have been divided so that every aspect could be given due emphasis. Moreover, each theme is a claim and it has been exhaustively supported by argumentation. The argumentation has been presented by citing the assertions of previous studies so that there will be no problem with reliability and validity since the drawback, according to many researchers, is biases in qualitative research.

### **Results and Discussion**

#### **Types Representing Varieties of Life**

There are different types of novel as novels come in all styles imaginable. Among them, a few of the major types of

novels are mystery, science fiction, fantasy, horror, thriller, romance, historical, and realist fiction (Wyatt et al., 2007). The mystery novels rotate around a crime that should be solved. The typical format will have a detective as the protagonist, who is surrounded by a group of characters who help to solve the crime (Walker, 2004). Some of the best-known mystery novels are *Nancy drew*, *Sherlock holmes*, and *And then there were none*.

The next type of novel is science fiction and fantasy which is based on hypothetical world-building (Ketterer, 1992). The science-fiction inclines to imagine a world that is different due to technology while fantasy is focused on the world of magic (Slusser & Rabkin, 1993). Some of such popular novels are *Lord of the rings*, *The chronicles of Narnia*, and *Harry*. The next types of novels are horror/thriller novels which are sometimes joined with other genres, mostly mystery or science fiction. The sense of fear, suspense, and psychological horror in the reader are the characteristics of these horror novels (Carroll, 1987). Examples include *The count of Monte Cristo*, *Heart of darkness*, and *Stephen king*.

Likewise, romantic novels are the next type of novels. The end goal, the occasional scandal, intense emotions, and love between the characters are the features of romantic novels (Nissen, 2009). Similarly, historical novels include fictional or semi-fictional stories related to historical figures (Gearhart, 2019). The iconic creations of historical fiction are *Ivanhoe*, *Gone with the wind*, and *The Hunchback of Notre Dame*. Likewise, realist fiction on the other hand is fiction that simply represents things truthfully,

without artistic flourishes (Rignall, 2016). All these types of the novel fictionalize different facets of human existence and actions.

### **Elements Correlating Life**

A novel is a narrative piece of work written in prose form that acutely reflects a particular human experience that has a substantial length (Newton, 1995). In other words, it is one of the powerful media of art sharing human emotions, experiences, sentiments, joy, and pain in the form of artistic and creative language. People often regard novels as a synonym for fiction. However, novel is a specific genre of fiction that falls under the domain of fiction, an umbrella term to the novel. It has several elements such as story, plot, setting, character, narrator, point of view, language, and style besides theme (Taylor, 1981).

The novels are written at a certain length. However, there is not any hard and fast rule regarding the length of the novel. It is a widely accepted fact that the novel is written from 10,000 to 40,000 or more words; and a novel that is written above 40,000 words is considered a full-length novel. Similarly, the plot/story is an important feature of the novel. Generally, the plot refers to the chain of events maintaining coherence and cohesion having a definite beginning, elaborative middle, and proper ending in a novel. This is also defined as a systematic arrangement of events and actions following the rule of the story such as initial incidents, rising action, climax, falling action, and denouement or closing action to arouse pity and fear in readers (Childs & Fowler, 2006). There are different types of stories,



for instance, simple plots, complex (the flashback technique), and the story written in the stream of consciousness techniques.

Moreover, characters are the most crucial components of a novel. It is through characters, the story in a novel goes ahead. All the characters are imaginative; however, they are true to life in most cases. In other words, they are like the characters of blood and flesh. There are diverse characters in terms of their role and nature. For instance; in terms of role, characters can be distinguished as protagonists, antagonists, and supporting characters. Whereas, regarding their nature, they are round, complex, static, and as such (Eder, 2010).

Furthermore, dialogues are a crucial feature of the novel. Through dialogue, the characters express emotions, moods, intentions, attitudes, and actions that impart actual life effect or reveals complications, show psychological development, and finally the author's opinions add life to the story. Similarly, the setting and atmosphere, as the name suggests, refers to where and when the events occurred. They play a harmonious role to make the story rich and contextual in terms of meaning and connection to life.

Likewise, point of view is related to the first, second, and third-person narrators in telling the story in a novel. For instance; the biographical and autobiographical stories are written in the first-person point of view; whereas the remaining types of novels are generally written in the third person. The third person narrator's point of view is further divided into omniscient points of view and limited points of view (Lejeune, Tomarken &

Tomarken, 1977). Finally, theme, a central idea or concept is regarded as another powerful element of the novel, contributed by different other elements of a novel, such as characters, dialogues, plot, narrative, scene, and atmosphere to present through and derive the meaning from the novel (Cuddon, 2012).

### **Mirroring the Society**

The novel is the reflection of life as well as a mirror of human society as it represents the social, political, cultural, and historical growth of the society it portrays. The statement that "novel is a mirror of life" can be strange at first as in the novel there is a clear sequence of action and an interesting story; but life is boring and pointless on most occasions (Tiffin, 1978). However, it can be called a mirror of life as it reflects on various aspects of events that people face in their lives.

For example, even the futuristic novel *The hunger games* reflects life although the world is alien to the modern human being. Here, the protagonist, Katniss, struggles with issues like love, care, family, and death. The struggle of Katniss is the reflection of teenagers who face difficulties in adjusting to life (Bland & Strotmann, 2014). Though Katniss is in an alien world, she is human; so, she loves, fears and does not understand things. She is the representation of many teenagers for whom the world is alien until they learn to adjust to this world.

Likewise, *Of mice and men* is another novel that reflects the nature of human existence with a true reflection of human society (Sabolick, 2005). It narrates the experience of George Milton and Lennie Small who were displaced migrant

workers who moved from place to place in California searching for jobs. Almost all the characters including George, Lennie Candy, Crooks, and Curley's wife at one point or the dreams had to live a different life (Levenson, 2005). For example, Curley's wife wanted to be a movie star, and George and Lennie dreamt of possessing a farm. Through these characters and their actions, this novel projects the friendship, dreams, hope, tragedy, sense of freedom, and the importance of relationships. These features are the nature of human beings. So, we can say that the novel reflects human life in fictional world.

Similarly, another novel, the *Red badge of courage* is a war novel written by American author Stephen Crane narrating the story of young soldier Henry Fleming who ran from the battle field (Levenson, 1995). To overcome the shame, he desired for a wound 'a red badge of courage' to counteract his cowardice (Binder, 1978). This novel reflects the inner story of the protagonist which is more the portrayal of the psychological fear. This work of fiction also explores the maturation, heroism, cowardice, and the indifference of nature.

Correspondingly, projection of human life as though it happened is another feature of the novel in which the novelist tries to reflect social norms and values in such a way that the events depicted in as the novel read like real-life anecdotes. For example, the novel *The good earth* by Pearl S. Buke (1931) projects the life of a typical Chinese character called Wang Lung. In the novel, Wang Lung suffers from poverty at the beginning. It reads like a real story of farmers in China in the 20th century as modern cultivation techniques were not

implemented on one side and on the other side drought and over-rain were causative factors for the farmers to suffer from (Cevasco, 1967). On the other side of the spectrum, when Wong Lung had enough from his farm, he started keeping a concubine which was prevalent during the later part of the 20th century in China.

Therefore, the novel does not always produce something fictitious; but most of the time, it depicts human society as it really exists. It is because the dialogue characters speak in the novel do not come from the vacuum; rather those linguistic chunks that people speak in human societies are picked up by the novelists and enabled the characters to use those in the form of dialogues. The actions are just some modifications of the real life action of the people and many fictional settings are the extended forms of the real world itself.

### **Expressing the Spirit of its Age**

The novelists, like the creators of other literary genres, reflect human society through the medium of language in an imaginative way (Kellman, 2000). Looking from this sense, it looks as though the novelists are the change-makers of the society by reflecting on their period, and articulating innovative ideas and attitudes (Albrecht, 1954). Similarly, Fedosova (2015) argued that time is one of the significant components of life across the globe which was beautifully seized and also reflected by the spirit of the time in a literary text. For instance, a novel written in the 20th century provides an alternative ending to the story, metaphorically suggesting the uncertainty of life. Supporting this stance, Kracauer (1966)

opined that a novelist can assist the totality of the historical spirit of the time; for instance, the sickness of Germany was reflected in Thomas Mann's *Doctor faustus* and Gunter Grass's *Tin drum*. Evelyn Waugh's trilogy *Sword of honour* examined the moral decline of English society after the World War II. Therefore, I believe that 'fiction' is the most influential genre to catch a certain period of the past and so it can make the time and reality immortal and eternal because the 'fact' only exists for a second or it takes a certain period.

Moreover, a novel can play an instrumental role to understand the bygone days. For instance, Wagner et al. (1987) argued that Hemingway's *The sun also rises* was highly successful to catch the destructive period of World War I. Elaborating the same idea, let's have another example of F. Scott Fitzgerald's novel and short stories which seized and beautifully presented the period of the American 'Jazz Age'. These examples show that literary texts, especially novel, are useful to study the spirit of the time, social values, norms, tradition, and religious economic and political situations. Likewise, J. D. Salinger's *Catcher in the Rye* (Kheirkhah & Pishkar, 2018) and Kingsley Amis' *Lucky Jim* (1954) depicted the unrest and bewilderment of the adults caused by the World War II (Londe, 2007). Another beautiful example was how beat-generation novelists such as Saul Bellow and Philip Roth artistically crafted the beat movement and social evil prevailed in that period (Cronin & Berger, 2015). Most importantly, Ralph Ellison and James Baldwin examined the racial issues, White supremacy and White hegemony over the

Blacks. In the 20<sup>th</sup> century, every writer/novelist tries to see society from the perspective of time- that is the spirit of the time because of the demand of the time.

Therefore, different genres of literature capture the most beautiful or remarkable times in one's life and the novel is one of them to capture such moments. Because of the content of the novel, many changes have been witnessed in human society since they are the agents of changes. On the other side, a novel captures the artistic moment of human society, their culture, people's identity, social way of life, people's expectations, and human nature. Hence, many novels in different languages have been written to reflect the spirit of the time.

### **Discourse in the Novel**

The novel, one of the influential democratic and artistic genres of literature, depicts the multiple voices of diverse walks of life. For example, Bakhtin (2005) argued that discourse is not merely a system of abstract linguistic categories; but it is an ideologically produced world perspective that is reflected in the multiple characters in the novel. He further opined that the novel reflects the entire aspects of human life as Lawrence understands the novel as a 'book of life'. Influenced by the Bakhtinian notion of the novel, Fonseka (2014) asserted that the novel is a word game, arranged creatively, artistically, and thoughtfully in a sequence of heteroglossia conditions displaying speech acts, human emotions, feelings, sentiments, and world views that constitute a narrative sharing different context with the readers. He further took the reference from Bakhtin's words and contended that words are

utilized nomologically in the verse as if they have no relationship to human, social, cultural, historical, and economic realities of life. On the other hand, in the novel, words are uttered by characters dialogically to represent the multiple realities of the society in their particular context. Following the above logic, I also believe that the novel is an appropriate genre representing contradictory voices, ideologies, and the world view of society through the medium of dialogue.

Moreover, Naughton (2015) claimed that Bakhtin's concept of the dialogic novel was even beneficial to know the struggles of everyday realities and respecting own opinions among students in the classroom. He further opined that a dialogic novel also aids to challenge authorities, injustices, exploitation, promote community learning, and build critical thinking by creating open-ended discussion forums. Additionally, applying the Bakhtinian lens, Pandya and Mills (2019) contended that the Carnavalesque notion in the novel dismantles all the hierarchies at least temporarily liberates the individuals from external and internal fear. Because of it, I am also convinced that dialogic novels provide the same space to all the characters to put their opinions and arguments forgetting the social, cultural, economic, or all sorts of barriers among the people. Earlier, Gee (1996) argued that discourses played an amicable role to comprehend social realities and ways of behaving, being, and thinking in a written piece of prose especially in a novel. Therefore, it is believed that discourse is the source of constructing knowledge; and academic discourses that are used for pedagogical objectives are as important as

the characters in the novel constructing knowledge about the social realities.

### **Conclusion**

A novel is a beautiful projection of human life in the form of a plot in which characters express different utterances according to the situation they confront on one side and the other role assigned by the novelist. Among many genres of literature, it is through novels that the portrayal of human feelings, sufferings, ups and downs, and many more things are expressed by the novelist. Because of such things, a novel is called a reflection of human life since whatever happens, a novelist depicts all the incidents in the form of a story which can be different according to the custom, tradition, way of life, and many more things related to life.

Similarly, different types of novel show different aspects of human life and human society. For example, a mysterious novel shows a secretive type of story or plot that is revealed at the end of the novel. Similarly, there are other types of novel, such as science fiction and fantasy, horror and thriller, romance, historical, realistic fiction, to name a few; and they also portray similar types of the story through different characters in different settings. Moreover, the different features of the novel make it a distinct genre of literature. Those features comprise plot, story, setting, characters, narrator, point of view, language, style, and theme. As types of novel project types of content, special features of it make is very realistic on the one hand and on the other it projects life in the form of fiction.

A novel mirrors human society. It is because whatever incidents happen in

human society, the novelist picks it up and presents it in the form of a novel. It is not the novelists who present a particular point of view, it is the characters in the novel through which the novelist presents a particular point of view. Like a poem can be the product of extreme imagination ( for example W. B. Yeats's "Leda and the Swan"), a novel is a true reflection of incidents that happened in human life, for example, *Perl harbor*. In the same way, it is one of the facilitators for social change

since the point of view presented in the novel can be adopted by the people and people from other places also get to know about it. In this regard, novelists are change makers. Moreover, as characters present their point of view in the form of dialogues, information is distributed dialogically. On the other side, the novel is a phenomenon that captures the beautiful and remarkable aspect of human life; so, it is also called a spirit of the time.

### References

- Abrams, M. H. (1998). *Glossary of literary terms* (7th ed.). [https://mthoyibi.files.wordpress.com/2011/05/a-glossary-of-literary-terms-7th-ed\\_m-h-abrams-1999.pdf](https://mthoyibi.files.wordpress.com/2011/05/a-glossary-of-literary-terms-7th-ed_m-h-abrams-1999.pdf)
- Albrecht, M. C. (1954). The relationship of literature and society. *American Journal of Sociology*, 59(5), 425-436. <https://www.journals.uchicago.edu/doi/abs/10.1086/221388>
- Beyes, T., Costas, J., & Ortmann, G. (2019). Novel thought: Towards a literary study of organization. *Organization Studies*, 40(12), 1787-1803. <https://doi.org/10.1177%2F0170840619874458>
- Binder, H. (1978). Donald pizer, ripley hitchcock, and *The red badge of courage*. *Studies in the Novel*, 10(1), 9-47. <https://www.jstor.org/stable/29531970>
- Bland, J., & Strotmann, A. (2014). The hunger games: An ecocritical reading. *Children's Literature in English Language Education*, 2(1), 22-43. <https://zenodo.org/record/322591#.X3PaIBTivIV>
- Carr, D. (1986). Narrative and the real world: An argument for continuity. *History and Theory*, 25(2), 117-131. <https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/db56/aaa97fdc0edf27a0a59f82ad7fcb163fbc7.pdf>
- Carroll, N. (1987). The nature of horror. *The Journal of Aesthetics and Art Criticism*, 46(1), 51-59. <http://www.dif.unige.it/epilog/Carroll-horror.pdf>
- Cevasco, G. A. (1967). Pearl Buck and the Chinese novel. *Asian Studies*, 5, 437-450. <https://sg.inflibnet.ac.in/bitstream/10603/205523/8/08%20chapter-2.pdf>
- Childs, P., & Fowler, R. (2006). *The Routledge dictionary of literary terms*. Routledge. [https://www.uv.es/fores/The\\_Routledge\\_Dictionary\\_of\\_Literary\\_Terms.pdf](https://www.uv.es/fores/The_Routledge_Dictionary_of_Literary_Terms.pdf)

- Crawford, F. M. (1895). *Marion Darche: A story without comment*: Macmillan.  
<https://www.rct.uk/collection/1056494/marion-darche-a-story-without-comment-by-f-marion-crawford>
- Cronin, G. L., & Berger, A. L. (2015). *Encyclopedia of Jewish-American literature* (7<sup>th</sup> ed.). Infobase Learning.
- Cuddon, J. A. (2012). *A dictionary of literary terms and literary theory*: John Wiley and Sons. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781118325988>
- Eder, J. (2010). Understanding characters in projections. *The Journal for Movies and Mind*, 4(1), 16-40. <https://doi.org/10.3167/proj.2010.040103>
- Fedosova, T. (2015). Reflection of time in postmodern literature. *Athens Journal of Philology*, 2(2), 77-87. <https://doi.org/10.30958/ajp.2-2-1>
- Fonseka, E. (2014). A discourse-analysis based critical approach to contextual interpretation of heteroglossic situation in the novel. *Advances in Language and Literary Studies*, 5(4), 168-175. <https://doi.org/10.7575/aiac.all.v.5n.4p.168>
- Gearhart, S. (2019). *The open boundary of history and fiction: A critical approach to the French enlightenment*: Princeton University Press. <https://press.princeton.edu/books/hardcover/9780691657127/the-open-boundary-of-history-and-fiction>
- Gillespie, G. (1967). Novella, nouvelle, novella, short novel?—A review of terms. *Neophilologus*, 51(1), 117-127. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01511303>
- Groot, J. D. (2009). *The historical novel*. Routledge. <https://www.routledge.com/The-Historical-Novel/Groot/p/book/9780415426626>
- James, H. (2011). *The art of the novel: Critical prefaces*. University of Chicago Press. <https://press.uchicago.edu/ucp/books/book/chicago/A/bo11309505.html>
- Kellman, S. G. (2000). *The translingual imagination*. University of Nebraska Press. <https://www.nebraskapress.unl.edu/nebraska/9780803274471/>
- Ketterer, D. (1992). *Canadian science fiction and fantasy*. Indiana University Press. <https://www.worldcat.org/title/canadian-science-fiction-and-fantasy/oclc/24142038>
- Kheirkhah, S., & Pishkar, K. (2018). Salinger's alien and lonely characters in American literature. *Journal of Applied Linguistics and Language Research*, 5(5), 234-247.
- Kirby, S. (2002). Natural language from artificial life. *Artificial Life*, 8(2), 185-215. <https://doi.org/10.1162/106454602320184248>
- Kracauer, S. (1966). Time and history. *History and Theory*, 6, 65-78. Wiley. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2504252>
- Lejeune, P., Tomarken, A., & Tomarken, E. (1977). Autobiography in the third person. *New Literary History*, 9(1), 27-50. <https://doi.org/10.2307/468435>

- Levenson, J. (1995). *The red badge of courage and McTeague: Passage to modernity*. Pizer, Cambridge Companion, 154-177. <https://reading.rl.talis.com/items/1DDA4D23-DF5C-13E2-F4C2-1379F2D1AA38.html>
- Londe, G. (2007). Reconsidering *Lucky Jim*: Kingsley Amis and the condition of England. In M. Mockay & L. Stonebridge (Eds.), *British Fiction After Modernism* (pp. 131-144), Springer. [https://doi.org/10.1057/9780230801394\\_11](https://doi.org/10.1057/9780230801394_11)
- Naughton, C. (2015). A reflection on Bakhtin's 'Epic and novel' in the context of early childhood student teachers' practicum. *Studies in Philosophy and Education*, 35(1), 93-101. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11217-015-9469-0>
- Newton, A. Z. (1995). *Narrative ethics*. Harvard University Press. <https://www.hup.harvard.edu/catalog.php?isbn=9780674600881>
- Nissen, A. (2009). *Manly love: Romantic friendship in American fiction*: University of Chicago Press. [https://books.google.com.np/books/about/Manly\\_Love.html?id=drKEZLXZ6TwC&redir\\_esc=y](https://books.google.com.np/books/about/Manly_Love.html?id=drKEZLXZ6TwC&redir_esc=y)
- Pandya, J. Z., & Mills, K. A. (2019). Bakhtin and the carnival: Humour in school children's film making. *Language and Education*, 33(6), 544-559. <https://doi.org/10.1080/09500782.2019.1629954>
- Pearce, W. B., & Littlejohn, S. W. (1997). *Moral conflict: When social worlds collide*. Sage. <https://psycnet.apa.org/record/1997-08471-000>
- Reeve, C., & Runge, L. L. (2007). The Old English Baron [1777]. *Middlesex: The Echo Library*. [https://www.goodreads.com/book/show/856279.The\\_Old\\_English\\_Baron](https://www.goodreads.com/book/show/856279.The_Old_English_Baron)
- Rignall, J. (2016). *Realist fiction and the strolling spectator (Routledge revivals)*. Routledge. <https://doi.org/10.4324/9781315755168>
- Sabolick, R. S. (2005). *The split dark rider: An examination of labor conflict and John Steinbeck's Of mice and men*. (Masters Dissertation). California State University. <https://scholarworks.lib.csusb.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=3864&context=etd-project>
- Slusser, G. E., & Rabkin, E. S. (1993). *Fights of fancy: Armed conflict in science fiction and fantasy*. University of Georgia Press.
- Taylor, R. (1981). *Understanding the elements of literature: Its forms, techniques and cultural conventions*. Palgrave Macmillan. <https://www.abebooks.com/9780333263211/Understanding-Elements-Literature-Forms-Techniques-0333263219/plp>
- Temmerman, K. D. (2014). *Crafting characters: Heroes and heroines in the ancient Greek novel*. Oxford University Press.

Tiffin, H. (1978). Mirror and mask: Colonial motifs in the novels of Jean Rhys. *Journal of Postcolonial Writing*, 17(1), 328-341. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17449857808588539>

Wagner, M. L., Donaldson, S., Reynolds, M. S., Martin, W., Davidson, A. E., Davidson, C. N., & Aldridge, J. W. (1987). *New essays on The sun also rises*. Cambridge University Press.

Walker, J. S. (2004). A kink in the system: Terrorism and the comic mystery novel. *Studies in the Novel*, 36(3), 336-351. <https://www.jstor.org/stable/20831900?seq=1>

Watt, I. (2001). *The rise of the novel*. University of California Press.  
[https://books.google.com.np/books/about/The\\_Rise\\_of\\_the\\_Novel.html?id=Pmwfh7X-IKAC&redir\\_esc=y](https://books.google.com.np/books/about/The_Rise_of_the_Novel.html?id=Pmwfh7X-IKAC&redir_esc=y)

Wyatt, N., Olson, G., Ramsdell, K., Saricks, J., & Welch, L. (2007). Core collections in genre studies: Romance fiction 101. *Reference and User Services Quarterly*, 47(2), 120-126. <https://www.journals.ala.org/index.php/rusq/article/viewFile/3739/4073>



## **Leisure Tourism in Bhedetar<sup>1</sup>**

Kaushal Koirala

Instructor at Department of Management, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email: *kaushal.koirala00@gmail.com*

### **Abstract**

This paper analyzes leisure tourism in Bhedetar, eastern Nepal. Leisure tourists usually enjoy beauty, nice hotels and resorts, and the atmosphere of natural and cultural heritage. The most popular activities of leisure tourism include social tours, cultural tours, religious tours, family tours, recreational tours, sports tours, and medical tours. Bhedetar lies at the confluence of two different geographical environments: the hills and Tarai. The geographical situation of Bhedetar plays an important role in the development of tourist destinations. Its exquisite scenic beauty, natural environment, and cultural heritage provide a reliable source of pleasure and refreshment for leisure tourists. This paper is based on both primary and secondary data sources. Primary data were collected from field observation, interaction with local people, hotel service providers, and tourists using checklists, questionnaires, and personal interviews. Secondary data were collected from books, journals, and e-resources. Tables, charts, and diagrams are used for data analysis. The findings revealed that the increasing number of hotels and lodges at Bhedetar indicated an internal market for leisure tourism. However, there are a lot of hurdles and barriers hindering the promotion of leisure tourism in this area. This paper suggests that the tourism promotion authorities should initiate action to address these barriers for the development of Bhedetar as a chosen leisure tourist destination.

*Keywords:* cultural heritage, leisure tourism, scenic beauty, temporary movement

### **Introduction**

Tourism is travel for pleasure or business, and the commercial activity of providing and supporting such travel. The World Tourism Organization defines tourism: "beyond the common perception of tourism as being limited to holiday activity only," as people "travelling to and staying in places outside their usual environment for not more than one consecutive year for leisure and not less than 24 hours for business and other

purposes" (in Ghimire & Tripathi, 2004, p. 15). Leisure tourism is the travel in which the primary motivation is to take a vacation from everyday life. Leisure travel is often characterized by staying in nice hotels or resorts, relaxing on beaches or in a room, or going on guided tours and experiencing local tourist attractions. Tourism has a connotation of leisure travel and tends to be synonymous with vacation. This is also reflected in dictionaries, which commonly refers to tourism as travel for pleasure. Tourism itself is the process of temporary

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, July 1  
Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 18  
Accepted on 2023, July 29

movement in the particular destination undertaken by the human that starts from one point and ultimately ends at the point where one started the journey from. It is the phenomenon of human character related to tour and travelling at the particular area (Oli, 2011).

Tourism activities often bring about the changes in an environment which are socio-cultural and economic condition of the destination areas. These changes are tourism impacts. Travel for leisure purposes has evolved from an experience reserved for very few people into something enjoyed by many. Historically, the ability to travel was reserved for royalty and the upper classes. From ancient Roman times through to the 17th century, young men of high standing were encouraged to travel through Europe on a “grand tour” (Chaney, 2000). Through the Middle Ages, many societies encouraged the practice of religious pilgrimage, as reflected in Chaucer’s *Canterbury Tales* and other literature. According to Ghimire and Tripathi (2004), tourism is about people being away from their homes on short term temporary visits for particular ‘tourism’ purpose. The two reasons for travelling which makes people tourists are leisure and businesses. The complexity of tourism can be gauged from the number of activities and businesses it encompasses, including other things, different modes of transport, varieties of accommodation, choices of cuisines and eating ambiances, range of Bhedetar and leisure tourism activities, and innumerable players. Tourist pursuits are now becoming segmented into different areas like culinary, cultural, historical, health, wild life, sex, and outdoor adventure activities. Outdoor adventure

pursuits are again further subdivided into a plethora of activities such as trekking, mountaineering, mountain and flat land cycling, and paragliding. Driven by changing lifestyles, these activities are becoming increasingly popular with more people wishing to experience more rewarding leisure experiences (Richards & Hall, 2000).

Tourism is concerned with providing the different supplies like package tour/travel (holiday and prepaid tour arrangement). Means of transport such as aircraft, train, bus, ship, coach, limo, car, auto and taxi are also important. Similarly, different places of accommodation such as hotel, lodge, guesthouse and rent-house are used by the tourists. Food and beverages outlets such as restaurant, bar, café, pubs and cafeteria are other essential elements in tourism. Tourism supplies also need the facilities like recreation and health like club and yoga centre. Likewise, culture and special events namely folk cultural show and festive event are the other necessary materials. In addition, theme parks and sporting activities like botanical garden and sports center with places for shopping and souvenir supermarket, curio stalls and handicraft shop are also considered to be essential facilities for the tourists. Information and assistance points such as tourist related office, wholesaler and agency are the additional important supplies (Oli, 2011). With all these supplies, tourism includes both recreation and economic activities.

Leisure tourism has witnessed a dramatic upsurge in the last few decades, driven by steadily increasing incomes and discretionary spending powers in the advanced and industrializing nations,

cheaper air travel, strong western currencies, globalization, the emergence and consolidation of a unipolar world, and the opening of numerous tourism destinations and experiences (Mowforth & Munt, 2003). Tourism industry also remains as a complex environment made of different sectors with their own complex environment. Tourism in Nepal, too, has all these facilities, challenges, complexities and possibilities.

Bhedetar is a village development committee which lies in Dhankuta district of eastern Nepal. It is located at the height of 1420 meters from the sea level. It is a border of Dhankuta and Sunsari districts. It is a small hill station which is 16 km away from the centre of Dharan sub-metropolis. There is a tower in this place named as Charles tower from where people can view Dharan city and few mysteriously beautiful hills and beautiful green forest. Bhedetar is famous for its unpredictable weather condition, such as a moment it hides into the blanket of thick fog and another moment it reveals itself as a crown of urban Dharan. The simple reason to visit Bhedetar is to stay on a peaceful environment watching beautiful scenarios with an interesting type of weather condition and to chill out with friends, families, and relatives to make the holidays wonderful.

The importance of Bhedetar for tourism got increased after the visit to this place by the then British Prince Charles and the built up of Charles tower at the point from where he observed the terai (Charles Point) in the 80's. This provided impetus to

Bhedetar to attract more tourists from within and outside the country. Now it is the station for all the sorts of the people and especially for the youth to spend the time for eating, drinking, pleasure and sightseeing particularly in the summer days ([www.wonderofnepal.com](http://www.wonderofnepal.com)). On this background, this study concentrates on the present condition of leisure tourism in Bhedetar to find the answer to the following research questions:

1. What are the trends of tourist inflow in Bhedetar?
2. What are the prospects of leisure tourism in Bhedetar?

### **Method**

This is a qualitative research based on field observation, survey and review. I visited the place to observe the inflow of the tourists and had discussions with the local people as well as tourists about their views on Bhedetar as a tourist destination. Their opinions have been presented in tables, graphs and pie charts. To find the history of the place, I reviewed the writings about Bhedetar. Many information has been collected conducting the semi structured interviews with the locals and the tourists there. The number of informants was 10. In the analysis of the data, descriptive and analytical research design has been used.

### **Results and Discussion**

This subsection focuses on presentation and analysis of data within the scope of research objective followed by interpretation and respective conclusion.

**Survey Results**

**Table 1**

*Purpose of Visiting Bhedetar*

Purpose of Visiting in Bhedetar	No. of People	Percentage
Family vacation (Holidays)	4	40
Adventure	2	20
Business Purpose	1	10
Religion / Culture	3	30
Total	10	100

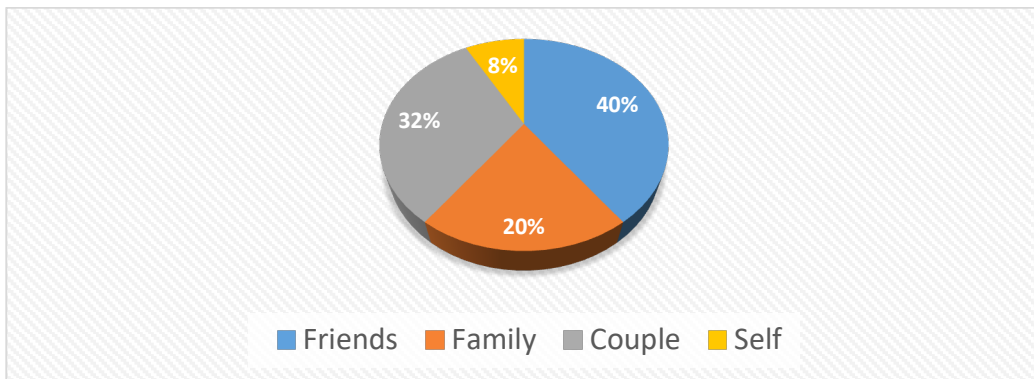
Source. Field Survey, March 27, 2022

The table represents the number of people visiting Bhedetar for different purposes. The above table depicts that 40 percent visitors prefer to visit Bhedetar in the family vacation / holiday, 20% prefer to visit for adventure, 10% for business purposes, and 30% for religious and

cultural purpose. From the above finding we can conclude that the majority of visitors who visit Bhedetar are more in holidays or in family vacation in comparison with the other reasons like adventures, business, and religion or culture purposes

**Figure 1**

*Types of People who Visit Bhedetar*



The pie chart represents the types of people who visit Bhedetar. Friends circle are often seen more to visit in the place rather than other i.e. 40% which is followed by 32%, 20% and 8% in regard with couple, family, and self respectively. The

data and observation have shown that the majority of the teenagers and friends visit the place. Secondly, couple are seen to visit the place in more ratio than the family groups and then only the number of individual visitors is found.

### Development of Tourist Destination in Bhedetar

The survey disclosed that Bhedetar was unknown and desolated place until 1977. There was not a single house and the area was used for grazing flocks of sheep during the winter season as transhumance by the Gurungs from places of surrounding districts such as Taplejung, Terhathum, and Sankhuwasabha. Perhaps the name of this place etymologically became “Bhedetar” as *bheda* means sheep and *tar* refers to terrace land for grazing.

About 50-60 years ago, Dharan began to develop as the market center for people of surrounding hills districts like Dhankuta, Bhojpur, Terathum, Khotang, and Sankhuwasabha. During that time the British camp was also established in Dharan; and gradually the town was covered by the *lahures* (working or retired military men). Later, the *lahure* families developed the kind of culture known as ‘lahure culture’, which meant the people especially from the lahure families used to visit Bhedetar for spending the time for pleasure and relax out of the pierce hot summer down in Dharan. At that time, there were no houses and facilities for eating, drinking and rest; they had to be back home after spending a short duration

there. Bhedetar gradually got eating facilities and resting place for a public bus traveler after the opening of Dharan Dhankuta highway in 1982. Then, gradually other activities for tourism increased.

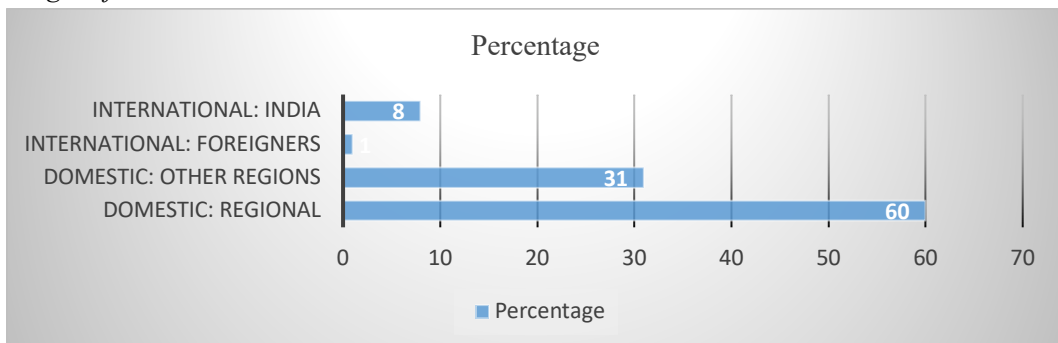
Now Bhedetar is the station for all sorts of people, and especially for the youth to spend the time for eating, drinking, pleasure, and sightseeing particularly in the summer days ([www.wonderofnepal.com](http://www.wonderofnepal.com)).

### Places of the Origin of Tourists

The origin of tourists at Bhedetar is mainly of domestic one. The origin places of the domestic tourists from the eastern region include Dharan, Itahari, Inaruwa, Biratnagar, Dhankuta, and other places, and the people from these as well as from the nearby cities of India such as Jogbani, Siliguri, Darjeeling, and Farbesgunj. Besides, groups of people representing different organizations and education institutes from different part of the country such as Kathmandu, Birjung, Janakpur, Hetauda, Ilam, and Jhapa also visit Bhedetar under the package tour program. The tourists from Europe and USA have no special season to visit Bhedetar.

### Graph 1

Origin of Tourists



The above bar graph shows that people travel from different places for the leisure and recreational purpose. The origin of tourist at Bhedetar is mainly of domestic one, accounting for 60%. It comprises eastern region and other regions within Nepal.

### **Motivational Factors**

Bhedetar is a beautiful place with rich and diverse natural and cultural resources that attract the tourists for short time refreshment. The place is famous for its unpredictable weather condition. It is a place to stay on a peaceful environment watching beautiful scenario around with an interesting type of weather condition and to chill out with friends, families, and relatives to make the holidays wonderful. Secondly, the geographical location of Bhedetar on the top of the hill offers panoramic view of the plain land, *Charkoshe Jhadi*, the Saptakoshi River, and Dharan bazaar down to the south, and the Himalaya ranges and peaks such as Makalu, Gaurishankar, Mt. Everest, Mt. Kanchanjunga, Singhlila and Kumbakarna to the north. Not only Himalayan peaks, it is also a good point to glance southern plains of Nepal including its southern border with India. Visitors can either take a bus or a taxi to get to Bhedetar. Private bikes, scooters, cars, and vans are most often used to visit the place.

One of the beauties and attractions of Bhedetar is its cool, fresh weather with warm sun shine that provides pleasing weather to the tourists there. This is a key element of tourism. There are different factors that motivate people to travel in the leisure time. Refreshment of body and mind, health purposes, sport and pleasure are some examples of physical motivation.

Whereas, cultural factors such as to know the life style of the local people, music, art, folklore, and dance are the other factors. In addition, interpersonal motivation such as a desire to meet new people, to visit friends or relatives, and to seek new experiences are the other factors. Desire for the continuation of hobbies and education are also seen to be concerned with the desire for recognition and attention from others, in order to boost the personal ego.

There are different places to visit in Bhedetar conducting and experiencing different activities. Pathibhara temple is one of the very famous religious shrines for both Hindu and Kirati people all over the world. It can be reached within half an hour walk from Bhedetar bazaar. The Pathibhara temple of Bhedetar is a branch of main Pathibhara temple in Taplejung. Second, Singsuwa (Namaste) fall, also known as *Namaste Jharana*, is a famous site these days. This fall is some 8 kilometers away from Bhedetar bazaar. It is more than 50 meters tall. Third, there is Namje Village with famous Namje Homestay. This spot is just 2.5 kilometer away from Bhedetar bazaar. This Magar majority ethnic village has unique Magar culture, language, ethnic attires, and their very famous typical dance namely Hurra. Hilltops of this village are dotted with various transmission towers of Nepal including those of FM radios, televisions, and mobile service providers. This place also contains a place called Aatma Ghar, designed by American architect Travice Price. Price collected stones from 231 graves of this place and assembled them at a place and made a collective grave. This is described as a 17th wonders of the world. CNN has listed this

village on of the top 12 underreported travelling destination in the world.

A western hilltop of Bhedetar bazaar is called Sailung Danda or Charles Point. It is said that 16 districts of east Nepal can be seen in binocular views from this point. The next is serpentine Tamor River and probably the biggest banyan tree of Asia can be seen from this Hilltop. Situated in 3 hours walking distance from Bhedetar, this place has seen rising numbers of hotels and home-stays. Graveled road to reach this place is being upgraded. Okhre view tower is located in Sanghurigadi rural municipality-5. This place can be reached within six-kilometer road distance from Bhedetar bazaar on the way to Rajarani. Similarly, another place to visit is Rajarani Taal (lake), which is at an altitude of 1500 meter above the sea level. Ever blooming lotus flower is seen at the middle of this natural lake. Travel agencies describe it as the biggest and most beautiful lake in hilly areas of east Nepal. This lake contains two little ponds called Sude Daha and Kali Daha, and a little fall as well. Visitors can enjoy boating and fishing in this beautiful lake. This valley-like place has huge touristic potential. It takes around 5 hours walk from Bhedetar to reach this lake. Vehicular ride from Bhedetar to Rajarani takes around 1 hour. Touristic hotels and some homestays are available in this area.

Sayok Yak (Sanghuri Fort) is an ancient fort made by Sayok Hang, an ancient Limbu King, after winning Thebohang. Sayok Yak is called Sanghurigadhi these days. This point was an ancient strategic point of Limbu Kings. There are 10 stone rooms in this fort where army soldiers guarding this fort used to live

in. Still, there are some remnants of this ancient fort. Stone of this fort were brought from Phusre stream of Dharan. This fort is a good location to have views of Dharan and parts of eastern terai. Another place to visit is Bishranti temple, and an elderly home in east Nepal. Around 50 elderly citizens are staying in this temple. They are provided with free treatment, food and housing. Located on the lap of popular rafting river Tamor which originates from the Himalayas, this temple is good travelling point both on religious and philanthropic grounds. Visitors from Nepal and India crowd this temple almost all the days in a week. Rafters make rafting from this place to Chatara of Sunsari for one-day rafting package.

Paragliding was commercially introduced in Koshi Province since October 2015. The takeoff station of the pioneer adventure sport is on the southern slope of Bhedetar namely Chhoti Morang. Bhedetar is the only hill station in this province with paragliding facility. The flight starts from 1250 meter above the sea level and lands at 390-meter height of Dharan-14, Bijaypur. Since 7 March 2020, zip line came into official operation in Bhedetar. This 650-meter-long zip line starts from the welcome gate of Bhedetar and descends to Devithan of Dharan-4. The thrilling 45-second journey is offered in three categories, namely classic, superman and tandem.

Tourists also make a hike in these hilltops: Sailung Danda (1450m) some twenty-minute walk from the Bhedetar square, Okhre Danda (1700m) at some 6 km away from Bhedetar, and Dhwaaje Danda (2040m) some 14 km away from Bhedetar. Bhedetar is also a good shopping

venue for varied locally grown products. Avocado, local hilly fruits, and green vegetables are loved by shoppers from Nepal and neighboring Indian states of Bihar and West Bengal. In addition to this, Churpi (hard cheese) and famed coconut biscuit of Dhankuta are among the shopping menu of Bhedetar. It is also famous for its orange groves.

### **Tourists' Perception**

Tourist perception can be defined as tourists' opinions, either positive or negative, towards certain things (Fauziah & Fathiah, 2011). It is also about tourists with their previous experience (Rajaratnam et al., 2015). Distinct tourist perception is tourist's evaluation on certain things (Ahadi et al., 2015). Thus, tourists' perception can be defined as opinion on what tourists actually faced during their vacation. Each and every tourist has different level of expectations which lead to different level of each type of their perception. The knowledge-attitude-behavior (KAB) model divides human behavior into three processes: acquiring knowledge, generating belief and forming behavior. According to this theory, attitude is the best predictor of behavior; knowledge is the basis of changes in attitude; and the degree of knowledge mastery affects the consistency of attitude and behavior. Thus, tourism knowledge is the key to the development of attitudes and travel behavior. But this knowledge is different from knowledge in the objective sense; rather it is an abstracted perception of knowledge that directly affects tourists' psychology and decision-making practices, as through the arousal of confidence and willingness to act (Quintal et al., 2010; Sharifpour et al., 2014).

### **Challenges and Barriers**

There are different challenges and barriers that should be faced and should be solved for the sustainability of tourism such as environmental consciousness among people, realized importance of forestry by the local people, and the need of preservation of local culture and tradition. The challenges also come for the growth of cultural pride and value with the exposure of the people. Infrastructure development, and improvement in the level of life standard are the other challenges and barriers.

### **Conclusion and Recommendations**

This paper attempts to argue that Bhedetar is a leisure tourism destination in east Nepal. It is a popular tourist destination not only from eastern Nepal, but also from the neighboring areas of India. The natural, historical, cultural and scenic beauty of this area are the attraction for tourists. Its ideal location offers a very pleasant weather condition, the historical place of Sanguriyok, Charls tower and homestay of Namje provides for both scenic and recreational environments for holiday making. The modernized life style and competition market have set a new trend in local community as well. Tourism has provided benefits to the people working in this sector, but Bhedetar has to expand its activities to attract many more people from within the country as well as from abroad, particularly from India to lengthen their stay in Bhedetar. Only then, many people will get benefits from tourism. For instance, if infrastructure is built such as cable car from Bijaypur, Dharan to Bhedetar and airport in Dharan may help to increase tourist in Bhedetar. Health and education facilities are other needs for



enhancing tourism in Bhedetar. Further, community-based tourism such as village or home stay tourism in the Magar village in the surrounding areas of Bhedetar which have already got successful in many other parts of the country requires to be developed for enhancing tourism.

### References

- Chaney, D. (2000). *Contemporary socioscapes: Books on visual culture*. Routledge.
- Ghimire, A., & Tripathi, R. P. (2004). *Travel and tourism: An introduction*. Ekta Books.
- Mowforth, M., & Munt, I. (2003). *Tourism and sustainability: Development and new tourism in third world*. Routledge.
- Oli, G. S. (2011). *Travel and tourism*. Buddha Academic Publishers.
- Quintal, V. A. (2010). Risk, uncertainty and the theory of planned behaviour: A tourist example. *Tourism Management*, 31(6), 797-805. doi10.1177/1356766713502486
- Rajaratanam, S. D. et al. (2015). *Destination quality and tourists' behavioural intentions*. <http://www.researchgate.com/publication>
- Richard, G., & Hall, D. (2000). *Tourism and sustainable community development*. Routledge.
- Sharifpour, M. (2013). Risk perception, prior knowledge and willingness to travel: Investigating the Australian tourist market's risk perceptions towards the middle east. *Journal of Travel Research*, 53(3), 307-322.

## **Impact of Bank Size on Performance of Nepalese Commercial Banks<sup>1</sup>**

Khagendra Adhikari, Chet Nath Poudel, Bikash Shrestha and Sunil Timsina  
Instructors at Department of Management, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email: *khagendra@koshistjames.edu.np*

*chetnath.poudel@koshistjames.edu.np*

*bikashstha9@gmail.com*

*sunil.timsina@koshistjames.edu.np*

### **Abstract**

Banks play an important role in an economy. Bank size is one of the important factors of banks to perform and generate revenue and profits. This study aimed to analyze the types of relation between bank size and bank performance. This study was based on 10 years' hand collected secondary quantitative data from 20 commercial banks leading 200 observations. Descriptive, correlational, and causal-comparative research designs were employed. Descriptive statistics was applied to compute summarized values of study variables. Correlation analysis was applied to measure the association between dependent and independent variables. Factor analysis was employed to develop surrogate size variable. Finally, linear and nonlinear regression models were applied to measure causal relation between bank size variables and performance variables. The results showed that there was not a linear relationship between bank size variables and bank performance variables, but it found nonlinear relationship between them. It indicated that there was a threshold value of bank size variables that maximized the bank performance.

*Keywords:* bank, linear and nonlinear, performance, size

### **Introduction**

Banks play crucial roles in enhancing overall economic activities, including mediation and financial operations that are necessary for a country's economic progress. The banking sector has a considerable impact on economic movements in all countries (Monnin & Jokipii, 2010). As a result, according to Albertazzi and Gambacorta (2010), a bank is a financial institution that invests the money of its clients and investors and serves as a financial intermediary between investors who have

extra money (depositors) and investors who need to borrow money to fuel their investments (borrowers). Banks, on the other hand, are regarded as one of the most essential financial institutions as they invest investors' deposits to profit. This profit is determined as the difference between the interest paid to depositors and the interest paid to borrowers. Banks also provide their clients with other financial services such as credit services, cheque cashing, issuing letters of credit and letters of guarantee, safety deposit boxes, portfolio management, foreign currency exchange services, trading of commercial

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, June 28

Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 12

Accepted on 2023, July 29

papers, bank acceptance, and underwriting of financial instruments (Bendi & D'Agnolo, 2008).

The profitability of commercial banks is a critical factor in assessing their performance and overall contribution to the economy. In Nepal, the banking sector plays a paramount role in facilitating economic growth and development. As the industry continues to evolve, one key aspect that warrants examination is the impact of a bank's size on the profitability of commercial banks. On this background, this article delves into the various aspects surrounding this relationship and explores the implications for the commercial banking sector in Nepal.

Bank size is a significant determinant of a bank's capabilities, resources, and market reach. Larger banks possess greater financial strength, broader customer bases, and expanded service offerings. These advantages can potentially translate into improved profitability. However, the size of a bank also presents challenges that need to be carefully considered.

Understanding the relationship between bank size and profitability is crucial for policymakers, regulators, and banking institutions alike. It helps shape effective strategies, decision-making processes, and regulatory frameworks that foster a stable and prosperous banking sector. By examining the impact of bank size on profitability in the context of commercial banks in Nepal, we can gain valuable insights into the unique dynamics and factors that play within the country's banking landscape.

The size of a bank can be divided into two categories: vertical and horizontal on the supply of a product or service across multiple entities. As a result, there is a continuous argument about the ideal bank size, management complexity, and exposures associated with activity ranges. Larger banks are becoming increasingly involved in market operations other than traditional lending, which has recently risen and grown dramatically. This shift in activity paradigm in the developed world has necessitated restrictions to decrease bank size vulnerability (Vinals et al., 2013). Financial deregulation and liberalization, as well as product innovation and technology, have resulted in the rise of financial supermarkets. As a result, larger banks have a weaker capital basis, less steady funding, engage in more market-based operations, and are more sophisticated than small banks. However, failures linked with larger banks are more damaging to the financial system than failures associated with small banks (Laeven et al., 2014).

The existing empirical studies found varied results regarding the relationship between firm size and profitability. Some researchers have discovered a positive association between firm size and profitability. Sritharan (2015) found that a firm's size is positively correlated with the profitability measure of return on assets. Arif, Khan, and Iqbal (2013) conducted a study on commercial banks and observed that all the size metrics they had examined had a positive impact on profitability. They concluded that commercial banks in Pakistan could enhance their profitability by pursuing

expansion strategies and implementing restructuring measures.

Other studies found a negative influence of firm size on profitability. Becker-Blease et al. (2010) and Banchuenvijit (2012) reported such negative relationships in their respective studies. Additionally, some researchers found insignificant effects of firm size on profitability. Kigen's (2014) findings, for example, demonstrated no significant relationship between profitability and total assets of insurance companies in Kenya.

Given the absence of a consistent conclusion, the impact of firm size on profitability remains debatable. Consequently, further empirical studies are necessary to bridge the gap in the size-profitability relationship. This study aims to address this issue within the context of Nepalese commercial banks, with the main motivation being the question: What kind of relation between bank size and performance (profitability) does exist in commercial banks of Nepal? So, the purpose of this study is to investigate the type of relationship (linear and nonlinear) between bank size and performance.

### **Review of Literature**

Kesver (2020) had used return on equity (ROE) as the profitability indicator in the research. The independent variable of the research was the size of the bank. Bank size was represented by total assets, total equity, and number of employees. The control variables of the research were leverage ratio and liquidity. According to the results obtained from the analysis, it was found that total assets, total equity and number of employees had a positive effect on the ROE. In addition, the financial

leverage ratio influenced ROE negatively while the liquidity ratio influenced ROE positively.

Econometric regression with the dependent variable being listed commercial banks' profitability results measured through ROA. The research methods used include descriptive statistics, IV regression and OLS regression analysis, and the authors carried out the model verification with Stata 14 software. The results showed that operating efficiency, loans size, retail loans ratio, state ownership, inflation rate, and GDP growth are factors that have a positive impact on profitability. On the other hand, variables such as capital size, credit risk, liquidity risk, bank size, and revenue diversification are statistically insignificant; hence, these variables are not statistically adequate to indicate the influence of those independent variable to banks' profitability (Phan et al., 2020).

A study conducted by Aladwan (2015) on Jordanian commercial banks to measure impact of bank size on profitability by dividing the banks in three categories by assets size found significant different in profitability of different size banks. Larger-sized banks had lower profitability as compared to medium and smaller-sized banks. It indicated a nonlinear relationship between bank size and profitability. Bank size was measured by total assets; and profitability was measured by return on equity. Neves, Proença, and Dias (2020) conducted a study on 66 Iberian banks, of which 13 were Portuguese and 53 Spanish, for the period from 2011 to 2016, and they reported nonlinear relationship between bank size and profitability of banks.

Mishra, Kandel and Aithal (2021) conducted a study aimed to assess the impact, contribution and relationship of size, loans and deposit, inflation, and capital on the profitability of the banks. Correlation and regression along with ratio analysis have been used to assure a contributory association among return on assets (ROA), return on equity (ROE) and net interest margin (NIM). There is a negative relation between ROA and ROE with loan ratio, deposit ratio, and capital ratio, while there is positive relation with bank size and inflation. However, in the case of NIM, bank size, loan ratio, deposit ratio and inflation exhibit a positive relation while the capital ratio shows a negative relationship with NIM.

Neupane (2020) revealed that the bank profitability measured by ROA of Nepalese commercial banks was significantly affected by concentration ratio, banking sector development, GDP growth, inflation, and exchange rate significantly in opposite direction rather it is not significantly affected by the internal factors like bank size, capital base, deposit, loan, off-balance sheet activities and number of branches. Another indicator of bank profitability, NIM, is significantly affected only by capital adequacy, absolute number of branches, and inflation rate.

Shrestha and Bhattarai (2018) examined the impact of bank size on profitability in Nepal using a sample of 27 commercial banks over a period of 10 years. The study employed regression analysis and found a positive association between bank size measured by total assets, and profitability measured by ROA and ROE. The findings indicated that larger banks enjoy cost efficiencies, higher

interest income, and improved access to funding, contributing to their profitability.

Ghimire (2019) examined the impact of bank size on profitability in the South Asian region including Nepal. The study compared commercial banks in Nepal, India, and Pakistan. The findings revealed a positive relationship between bank size and profitability in all three countries, suggesting similar trends and factors influencing profitability across the region.

Many studies have been conducted to measure linear relation between bank size and performance in different countries including Nepal. A small number of studies have investigated the nonlinear relation of bank size with bank performance in other countries. Studies have investigated only linear relation between bank size and performance in Nepal. So, this study aims to fill this gap in Nepalese context.

## **Method**

### **Research Design**

This study was purely quantitative, so it was guided by positivist research philosophy. Because of the purely quantitative nature of the study, it applied descriptive, correlational, and causal-comparative research designs to deal with the issues associated with relationship between bank size and performance. The descriptive research design was used to summarize the study variables. It was useful to know the status of variables and explained the variables that were present at a given situation. The fundamental premise behind this approach was that the variables and problems had already been identified by the investigation.

The link or relationship between two variables was examined using a correlational study design. To determine the direction, amount, and kind of link, the study first determined if the variables were associated or not. According to Kothari (2004), variables may be related in the same direction, in the opposite direction, or not at all. Investigating potential cause and effect relationships between the variables was the goal of causal-comparative study design. It assessed the current effects of one or more variables on another variable.

The "ex-post facto research design" was also used. It was the kind of design where the independent variable(s) had already happened and where the investigation began with the observation of a dependent variable before observing the independent variable(s) or variables in retrospect for their potential relationship (Kerlinger, 1983). This methodology had also been used in this work to quantify the potential causal connections between several dependent and independent variables. More specifically, the study looked at the connections of total assets, total equity, and number of employees (measures of bank size) with net interest margin, return on assets, and return on equity (measures of bank performance) respectively.

### **Population, Sample, Nature, and Source of Data**

The population of this study was 21 commercial banks running currently in Nepal, and the sample size was 20 commercial banks to investigate the impact of bank size on performance. The data were secondary, quantitative and hand collected from the annual reports of the banks and

the data covered 10 years' period from mid-July 2012/13 to mid-July 2020/21 resulting into 200 observations.

### **Variables Selection**

Bank size was measured by log of total assets, (LnTA), total equity (LnEquity) and number of employees (LnEM). Assets, equity, and employees are major factors of production and many past studies had used them as the measures of firm size (Kotey, Owusu-Sekyere & Amponsah, 2021; Tran & Phanb, 2020; Kevser, 2020). Bank performance was measured by return on assets (ROA), net interest margin (NIM) and return on equity (ROE). These variables are the indicators of bank profitability and many studies had used these indicators as the proxies of firm performance (Shehzad, De Haan, & Scholtens, 2013, Neves, Proença, & Dias, 2020, & Islam & Nishiyama, 2016).

### **Methods of Data Analysis**

Data were analysed using statistical and econometric models. When presenting quantitative data, descriptive statistics were used to summarize and organize them. It made easier to manage a large amount of data in a simpler format, such as the average, standard deviation (SD), and minimum and maximum values of the variables used to explain the characteristics of the sample banks. Nonparametric correlation was used to quantify the relationship between two variables' magnitude and direction since the study variables were not normally distributed. Regression analysis was then used to assess the influence of independent variables on dependent variables both separately and in combination with other variables. It explained the many statistical

tests of significance, such as the t-test and the F-test, for validating models. The Statistical Package for Social Science (SPSS) was used to conduct a t-test to examine the individual impacts of each regression model. The next section contains a description of the models and statistical tests of significance.

**Model Specification**

The econometric models were used in the study that tried to look at how bank size variables (independent variables) affected the bank performance variables (dependent variables). The effects of independent variables on dependent variables of Nepalese commercial banks were examined using the linear and nonlinear regression models below.

Bank performance = f (bank size).

The linear regression models were:

$$NIM_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \ln TA_{it} + \beta_2 \ln Equity_{it} + \beta_3 \ln EM_{it} + eit, \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

$$ROA_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \ln TA_{it} + \beta_2 \ln Equity_{it} + \beta_3 \ln EM_{it} + eit, \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

$$ROE_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \ln TA_{it} + \beta_2 \ln Equity_{it} + \beta_3 \ln EM_{it} + eit, \dots\dots\dots (3)$$

The nonlinear regression models were:

$$NIM_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 Surrogate\ size_{it} + \beta_2 Surrogate\ size_{it}^2 + \beta_3 Surrogate\ size_{it}^3 + eit, \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

$$ROA_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 Surrogate\ size_{it} + \beta_2 Surrogate\ size_{it}^2 + \beta_3 Surrogate\ size_{it}^3 + eit, \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

$$ROE_{it} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 Surrogate\ size_{it} + \beta_2 Surrogate\ size_{it}^2 + \beta_3 Surrogate\ size_{it}^3 + eit, \dots\dots\dots (3)$$

The variables on the left-hand side denote the dependent variables in the regression models. Therefore, NIM, ROA, and ROE were dependent variables in equations 1, 2, and 3 of both models. Similarly, the right-hand side of the regression models denote the independent variables. Thus, total assets, total equity, and number of employees in log form were independent variables in the three linear models.

Surrogate size variable was created using factor analysis since three bank size variables were highly correlated to each other. It was conducted to avoid multicollinearity problem faced in the linear models, and to measure nonlinear relation of bank size with bank performance.

Where,

$\ln TA_{it}$  = natural log of total assets, measured as the natural logarithm of the total assets reported at the end of the fiscal year of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{LnEquity}_{it}$  = natural log of total equity, measured as the natural logarithm of the total equity reported at the end of the fiscal year of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{LnEM}_{it}$  = natural log of number of employees at the end of the fiscal year of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{NIM}_{it}$  = net interest margin, measured as net interest income divided by yearend total assets of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{ROA}_{it}$  = return on assets, measured as net profit after taxes divided by yearend total assets of company<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

$\text{ROE}_{it}$  = return on equity, measured as net profit after taxes divided by yearend total equity of bank<sub>i</sub> in year<sub>t</sub>.

Surrogate size<sub>it</sub> = factor score of three bank size variables

## Results and Discussion

This section deals with the results of the study that analysed data from 20 commercial banks over ten-year period to examine the relationship of measures of bank size such as total assets (TA), total equity (Equity), and number of employees (Employees) with various performance indicators such as return on assets (ROA), net interest margin (NIM), and return on equity (ROE). The data for this study were collected, evaluated, and interpreted; and the results were compared with the previous similar empirical findings.

## Descriptive Statistics

The descriptive statistics applied in this study included the number of observations, minimum values, maximum values, mean values, and standard deviations of the variables under investigation. Descriptive statistics provide information in summarised and meaningful form, which is usually easier for interpretation and understanding. Table 1 shows the descriptive statistics of dependent and independent variables during the study period.

**Table 1**

*Summary Statistics of Study Variables (Rs. In million)*

Variables	Observations (n)	Minimum Rs.	Maximum Rs.	Mean Rs.	Std. Dev Rs.
Employees	200	231	3472	1155.39	700.82
Net Interest Margin	200	0.28	34.65	3.30	2.35
Return on Assets	200	-3.43	10.33	1.55	0.93
Return on Equity	200	-55.92	74.62	14.29	9.07
Total Assets	200	2822.57	419818.1	115301.09	75483.98



Equity	200	514.69	84031.55	13269.68	10642.95
--------	-----	--------	----------	----------	----------

*Note.* Annual reports of respective banks and authors' calculations

The descriptive statistics showed that average employees 1155.39 and standard deviation were 700.82. Similarly, NIM of sample banks during the study period showed 3.30 mean value and standard deviation of 2.35. Mean and standard deviation of ROA were 1.55 and 0.93 respectively with maximum value of 10.33 and minimum value of -3.43. The mean and standard deviation of ROE were 14.29 and 9.07 respectively. In addition, the mean and standard deviation of total assets were 115301.09 million and 75483 million respectively. The maximum, minimum, mean, and standard deviation

values of total equity were 84031.55, 514.69, 13269.68, and 10642.95 million respectively. The summary statistics of the variables show that they are not normally distributed.

### Correlation between the Variables

Table 2 presents the nonparametric correlation between the study variables. There was negative and significant relation of total assets with NIM, ROA, and ROE. Likewise, there was negative relation of equity with NIM, ROA, and ROE but the correlation with NIM and ROA were not statistically significant.

**Table 2**

*Correlations Between the Study Variables*

Variables	Total Assets	Total Equity	Employees	NIM	ROA	ROE
Total Assets	1					
Total Equity	.923**	1				
Employees	.721**	.687**	1			
NIM	-.212**	-0.104	0.003	1		
ROA	-.170*	-0.012	-.173*	.597**	1	.623**
ROE	-.283**	-.394**	-.349**	.328**	.623**	1

*Note.* \*\* indicates significant at 0.01 level and \* indicates significant at 0.05 level.

The relation of number of employees with NIM was positive; but it was not significant. Equity was negatively and significantly related with ROA, and ROE. It indicated that size and performance were negatively related.

### Linear Regression Analysis

Linear regression measures the causal relation between dependent and independent variables. The independent variables of the study are total assets, total equity and number of employees which are the proxies of bank size. The dependent variables are NIM, ROA and ROE which are the proxies of bank performance.

**Table 3***Linear Regression of NIM on Assets, Equity, and Employees*

Model	Constant	LnTA	LnEM	Lnequity	Adj. R <sup>2</sup>	F
1	33.43	-1.14 (0.26)	-	-	13.01	1.3
2	4.48	-	-0.22 (0.60)	-	0.00	0.27
3	11.89	-	-	-0.37 (0.37)	1.00	0.80
4	38.79	-3.43 (0.20)	-	2.22 (0.20)	27.00	0.84
5	44.69	-2.04 (0.18)	1.46 (0.10)	-	20.00	2.51
6	12.52	-	0.17 (0.48)	-0.45 (0.27)	1.00	0.89
7	48.55	-4.07 (0.16)	1.30 (0.10)	2.11 (0.18)	33.00	1.90

*Note.* P-values are in parentheses.

The causal relationship between assets and NIM was found negative; but it was not statistically significant. The relation between equity and NIM was inconclusive since the sign of coefficient were not consistent across the models although they were not significant.

Likewise, the relationship between employees and NIM was also found inconclusive; but all the coefficients were insignificant. This finding was similar with the results of Neupane (2020); but it did not match with the findings of Saad and El-Moussawi (2012).

**Table 4***Linear Regression of ROA on Assets, Equity, and Employees*

Model	Constant	LnTA	LnEM	Lnequity	Adj. R <sup>2</sup>	F
1	7.80	-0.25 (0.44)	-	-	31.90	0.60
2	-0.36	-	0.08 (0.59)	-	0.05	0.29

3	2.36	-	-	-0.12 (0.43)	0.08	0.64
4	1.07	-0.34 (0.47)	-	0.16 (0.57)	3.30	0.32
5	-1.52	-	0.23 (0.15)	-0.32 (0.003)	21	4.56*
6	10.53	-0.39 (0.05)	1.13 (0.02)	-	27.4	3.06*
7	11.13	-1.43 (0.07)	1.13 (0.02)	0.08 (0.74)	27.16	2.03

*Note.* P-values are in parentheses and \* indicates F-value is significant at 0.05 level.

Table 4 reports the causal relation between ROA and bank size variables. It showed that assets negatively impacted ROA, but the result was not significant. Employees positively impacted ROA across the models, only two models (6 and 7) out of seven models were statistically significant. The impact of equity on ROA

was inconclusive since the sign of coefficients were not consistent across the models. Only one coefficient (model 5) was statistically significant. This finding was consistent with the finding of Neupane (2020), but was inconsistent with the finding of Ghimire (2019), and Shrestha and Bhattarai (2018).

**Table 5**

*Linear Regression of ROE on Assets, Equity, and Employees*

Model	Constant	LnTA	LnEquity	LnEM	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	F
1	-4.35	7.93 (0.06)	-7.81 (0.11)	-0.28 (0.91)	10.99	2.89*
2	-2.23	7.79 (0.11)	-7.83 (0.11)	-	11.43	1.36
3	9.97	0.41 (0.84)	-	-0.87 (0.71)	0.00	0.91
4	65.93	-	-2.82 (0.41)	1.91 (0.60)	31.70	0.64
5	16.70	-0.10 (0.93)	-	-	0.00	0.01

6	17.96	-	-	-0.53 (0.68)	0.00	0.17
7	58.90	-	-1.94 (0.29)	-	26.80	1.10

Note. P-values are in parentheses and \* indicates f-value is significant at 0.05 level.

Table 5 reports the causal relationship between ROE and bank size variables. Most of the coefficients of assets were positive, but not significant. Equity had negative impact on ROA, but none of the coefficients were significant. It indicated non-existence of relation between equity and ROE. The impact of employees on ROE was inconclusive and insignificant. In all models of above the

values of adjusted R-square were low and most of them were statistically insignificant (out of 21 F- values only 3 were significant). From above analysis it was concluded that there was not linear relation between bank size variables and bank performance variables. This finding was not consistent with the finding of Kesver (2020), but consistent with the finding of Shrestha and Bhattarai (2018).

**Table 6**  
*Correlation Between Independent Variables*

Variables	Total Assets	Total Equity	No of Employees
Total Assets	1		
Total Equity	0.923**	1	
No of Employees	0.721**	0.687**	1

Note. \*\* Indicates correlation is significant at 0.01 level.

Table 6 shows the inter-relationship between independent variables of the study. The three indicators of firm size variables (total assets, total equity and number of employees) were highly and positively related to each other; so, the regression using three independent variables simultaneously created multicollinearity. Creating single surrogate size variable using factor analysis solves the problem of multicollinearity.

variables and performance variables of the commercial banks in Nepal. Table 6 shows high correlations between the independent size variables. So, factor analysis was performed to compute surrogate size variable as factor score of them which eliminated the problem of multicollinearity between the independent size variables since only one size factor/ variable was extracted which explained 73.90 percent variation of the three size variables (eigenvalue of extracted factor was 2.217 out of 3).

**Factor Analysis**

The above linear regressions were unable to stablish relationship between size

**Table 7***KMO and Bartlett's Test, Factor Loading and Communalities*

KMO	Cronbach's Alpha	Chi-square	Df	P-value
0.69	0.89	411.78	3	0.000

Variables	Factor Loadings	Communalities
Total Assets	0.948	0.898
Total Equity	0.844	0.712
No of Employees	0.926	0.858

*Note.* Authors' calculations using SPSS

The Cronbach's alpha coefficient was 0.89 which was above the lower limit of 0.70. The number of observations were 200 which exceeded 30 observations per variables, since there were six variables in this study. Kaiser-Meyer-Olkin (KMO) measure of sampling adequacy was 0.69 which was above the minimum KMO of 0.50. The correlation matrix of three measure of bank size was appropriate for factor analysis since it was significant. The factor loadings of each variable were higher than 0.50 and communality of each variable was also higher than 0.60 (Chawla & Sondhi, 2016, Hair, Black, Babin & Anderson, 2017).

### **Regression Analysis on Surrogate Size Variable**

The regression results of tables 3, 4 and 5 were not conclusive and the results of all most model were not significant, and sign of coefficients were not consistent across the models. So, it was suspected that the relation between size variables and performance variables was nonlinear.

In the table 8, NIM, ROA and ROE were dependent variables (indicators of

bank performance) and factor score of total assets, total equity, and number of employees (surrogate size variable) was the independent variable. Linear, quadratic, and cubic models were estimated for each dependent variable. Surrogate size variable was statistically significant in linear, quadratic, and cubic models in case of NIM, but value of adjusted R square was higher in quadratic and cubic models which indicated nonlinear relationship between size and NIM. It indicates that there is a particular bank size that maximizes bank NIM. In case of ROA, linear model was not significant, but quadratic and cubic models were significant, but the value of adjusted R square was higher in cubic model. It also suggests bank size that maximizes bank ROA. Likewise, linear, and cubic model were not statistically significant in case of ROE, but the quadratic model was significant, and the value of adjusted R square was also higher of this model. Both coefficients of quadratic model were statistically significant, and the coefficient of squared surrogate size was higher than surrogate size which indicates that as the bank size increases ROE decreases by

higher rate than the size increases. It also confirms nonlinear relationship between ROE and bank size. These results were not consistent with the finding of Ozcan, Unal, and Yener, (2017); but these findings were consistent with the finds of Lee (2009), Gangakhedkar, PahiInder, and Yadav (2022), and Kotey, Owusu-Sekyere, and Amponsah (2021). Similar results were

found by Tran and Phanb (2020 in Vietnam’s commercial banks during 2009 to 2018. Haslem (1968) also claimed that the size relationships were frequently nonlinear with generalized concave or convex shapes and this claim was supported by the findings of Rawlin and Shanmugam (2013).

**Table 8**

*Regression of Surrogate Size on NIM*

Model	Constant	Surrogate Size	Surrogate Size <sup>2</sup>	Surrogate Size <sup>3</sup>	Adj. R <sup>2</sup>	F
Linear	3.30	-0.49 (0.003)			3.90	9.14 (0.003)
Quadratic	2.39	-0.15 (0.34)	0.91 (0.000)		23.9	32.26 (0.00)
Cubic	2.94	1.75 (0.000)	0.14 (0.88)	- 0.90 (0.000)	67.7	140.29 (0.009)

*Regression of Surrogate Size on ROA*

Linear	1.55	-0.07 (0.31)			0.00	1.03 (0.31)
Quadratic	1.44	-0.15 (0.71)	0.11 (0.06)		1.40	8.18 (0.00)
Cubic	1.60	0.51 (0.00)	-0.14 (0.02)	-0.25 (0.00)	23.10	20.95 (0.00)

*Regression of Surrogate Size on ROE*

Linear	14.29	-0.74 (0.25)			0.20	1.34 (0.25)
Quadratic	16.35	-1.53 (0.02)	-2.07 (0.00)		6.70	8.81 (0.00)
Cubic	16.17	-2.16 (0.03)	-1.77 (0.007)	0.30 (0.41)	6.60	5.67 (0.00)

*Note.* Authors’ calculations using SPSS and parentheses indicate p-values.

The nonlinear relationship between size and firm performance supports diseconomies of scale theory of economics. It indicates that minimum level of assets, equity and employees are required to produce profits or performance; but as they increase performance does not increase steadily. These results confirm that a larger size will be able to perform better to increase revenues and to control costs, but too large size will make revenue generation and costs reduction process ineffective (negative impact).

### Conclusion and Implications

This study does not find linear relationship between bank size and profitability of the banks in the Nepalese commercial banking industry since none of the linear regression models were statistically significant. This study finds a non-linear relationship between bank size and performance (profitability), suggesting that as bank size increased, profitability (NIM and ROA) increased until it reaches the certain threshold, after which profitability decreased, but this explanation is not in case of ROE since its both

coefficients were negative indicating negative impact of size on ROE. Nepalese commercial banks should pay more attention on growing their size to be benefited from it. It has implications for policy makers (Nepal Government and Nepal Rastra Bank) while issuing license, formulating merger and acquisition policy, and regulating capital adequacy. It has also implications for investors for promotor shareholder, diversifying investment, and making portfolio decisions and to the management of banks for developing branch expansion policy, expanding services, and developing merger and acquisition strategies searching new market segment. This study applied ordinary least square method of regression analysis and it did not include control variable that impact bank performance. This finding can be improved by including control variables and using other methods of estimation like panel dynamic model, random effects method and generalized methods of movement. This study can work as a foundation for the future research to estimate nonlinear relation.

### References

- Aladwan, M. S. (2015). The impact of bank size on profitability: An empirical study on listed Jordanian commercial banks. *European Scientific Journal*, 11(34), 217-236.
- Albertazzi, U., & Gambacorta, L. (2010). Bank profitability and taxation. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 34 (11), 2801-2810.
- Rashid, A., Khalid, M., Khan, M. A., Khan, S., Sohail, F., & Fatima, A. (2018). An assessment of bank capital effects on bank-risk-taking in Pakistan. *Pakistan Journal of Applied Economics*, 28(2), 213-234.
- Becker-Blease, J., Kaen, F., Etebari, A., & Baumann, H. (2010). Employees, firm size, and profitability in U.S. manufacturing industries. *Investment Management and Financial Innovations*, 7(2), 7-23.
- Chawla, D., & Sondhi, N. (2016). *Research methodology: Concepts and cases* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed.). Vikas Publishing House.

- Gangakhedkar, R., PahiInder, D., & Yadav, S. (2022). The nexus between firm size, growth, and profitability: New panel data evidence from Asia–Pacific markets. *European Journal of Management and Business Economics*, 31(1), 115-140.
- Hair, J.F., Black, W.C., Babin, B.J., & Anderson, R. E. (2017). *Multivariate data analysis* (7<sup>th</sup> ed.). Pearson India.
- Haslem, J. A. (1968). A statistical analysis of the relative profitability of commercial banks. *The Journal of Finance*, 23(1), 167-176.
- Islam, M. S., & Nishiyama, S. I. (2016). The determinants of bank net interest margins: A panel evidence from South Asian countries. *Research in International Business and Finance*, 37, 501–514. doi:10.1016/j.ribaf.2016.01.024
- Kerlinger, F. N. (1983). *Foundation of behavioural research* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed). Sujeet Publication.
- Kevser, M. (2020). Does bank size affect the bank profitability? An evidence from Borsa Istanbul (BIST), Turkey. *International Journal of Business and Economic Studies*, 2(2), 63-71. <https://dergipark.org.tr/en/pub/uiecd/issue/59317/845571>.
- Kigen, W. K. (2014). The effect of firm size on profitability of insurance companies in Kenya [Unpublished MBA project]. University of Nairobi.
- Kotey, R. A., Owusu-Sekyere, F., & Amponsah, D. A. (2021). A critical examination of the effect of size on the profitability of insurance brokerage firms in Ghana. *African Review of Economics and Finance*, 13(2),3-32.
- Kothari, C. R. (2004). *Research methodology, methods, and techniques* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed.). New Age International.
- Kweh, Q. L., Lu, W. M., Ting, I. W. K., & Thi My Le, H. (2022). The cubic S-curve relationship between board independence and intellectual capital efficiency: Does firm size matter? *Journal of Intellectual Capital*, 23(5), 1025-1051.
- Lee, J. (2009). Does size matter in firm performance? Evidence from US public firms, *International Journal of the Economics of Business*, 16(2), 189-203. doi: 10.1080/13571510902917400
- Mishra, A. K., Kandel, D. R., & Aithal, P. S. (2021). Profitability in commercial bank – A case from Nepal. *International Journal of Case Studies in Business, IT, and Education*, 5(1), 61-77. <https://ssrn.com/abstract=3845523>
- Monnin, P., & Jokipii, T. (2010). The impact of banking sector stability on the real economy. *Swiss National Bank Working Papers*, 1(5), 1-23.
- Neupane, B.P. (2020). Profitability determinants of Nepalese commercial banks. *Press Academia Procedia (PAP)*. 12, 40-45.
- Neves, M. E., Proença, C., & Dias, A. (2020). Bank profitability and efficiency in Portugal and Spain: A non-linearity approach. *Journal of Risk and Financial Management*, 13(11), 1-19.
- Ozcan, I. S. I. K., Unal, E. A., Yener, U. N. A., Ha T, T., & Phanb, L. (2017). The effect of firm size on profitability: Evidence from Turkish manufacturing sector. *Journal of Business Economics and Finance*, 6(4), 301-308.



- Phan, H. T., Hoang, T. N., Dinh, L. V., & Hoang, D. N. (2020). The determinants of listed commercial banks' profitability in Vietnam. *Journal of Asian Finance, Economics and Business*, 7(11), 219–229.
- Rawlin, R., & Shanmugam, R. (2013). Non-linear relationships of key determinants in influencing the profitability of a large public sector bank in India. *Great Lakes Herald*, 7(1), 35-40.
- Saad, W., & El-Moussawi, C. (2012). The determinants of net interest margins of commercial banks in Lebanon. *Journal of Money, Investment and Banking*, 23, 118-132.
- Shehzad, C. T., De Haan, T. J., & Scholtens, B. (2013). The relationship between size, growth and profitability of commercial banks. *Applied Economics*, 45(13), 1751-1765.
- Shrestha, B., & Bhattarai, B. P. (2018). Determinants of loan loss provision of commercial banks of Nepal. *European Journal of Accounting, Auditing and Finance Research*, 6(9), 23-37.
- Sritharan, V. (2015). Does firm size influence on firm's profitability? Evidence from listed firms of Sri Lankan hotels and travels sector. *Research Journal of Finance and Accounting*, 6(6), 201-207.
- Tharu, N. K., & Shrestha, Y. M. (2019). The influence of bank size on profitability: An application of statistics. *International Journal of Finance, Accounting, and Management*, 1(2), 81-89.
- Tran, D. T. T., & Phanb, H. T. T. (2020). Bank size, credit risk and bank profitability in Vietnam. *Malaysian Journal of Economic Studies*, 57(2).233-251.
- Veronica Siregar, S., & Bachtiar, Y. (2010). Corporate social reporting: Empirical evidence from Indonesia stock exchange. *International Journal of Islamic and Middle Eastern Finance and Management*, 3(3), 241-252. doi:10.1108/17538391011072435.
- Vu, T. H., Nguyen, V. D., Ho, M. T., & Vuong, Q. H. (2019). Determinants of Vietnamese listed firm performance: Competition, wage, CEO, firm size, age, and international trade. *Journal of Risk and Financial Management*, 12(2), 1-19.

## **Impact of Marketing Expenditure on Sales and Profitability of Listed Manufacturing Companies in Nepal<sup>1</sup>**

Khusboo Agrahari, Dipendra Karki and Ram Bahadur Rai

Instructors at Department of Management, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email: *khusbu.basnet@koshistjames.edu.np*,

*dipendrakarki.np@gmail.com*,

*rambdrai.itb@gmail.com*

### **Abstract**

Marketing expenses are important corporate operations that have an impact on lead generation and revenue in an organization. In today's business environment, it is essential to know how marketing expenditures affect a company's performance. Based on this viewpoint, the primary goal of this study was to determine whether marketing expenditures had an impact on companies' performance. The study examined the impact of marketing expenditures on sales and profitability of listed manufacturing companies in Nepal. This study is based on secondary data collected from six listed manufacturing companies for six years, from 2016/17 to 2021/22. A descriptive statistic, correlation analysis, and simple linear and non-linear regression methods were applied to analyze the data. The study concludes that there was a non-linear relationship of marketing expenditure with sales and profitability. It indicates that there was a certain level of marketing expenditure that maximizes sales and profitability. The company needs to analyze what amount of money, time, and effort are put into marketing expenditures. Companies face the danger of inducing a price orientation in the market if they employ promotions excessively. A balanced marketing budget is crucial to the company's prosperity. With this view, the marketing manager should provide an accurate annual marketing budget that maximizes sales and profitability for the company.

*Keyword:* linear and non-linear, marketing expenditure, profitability, sales

### **Introduction**

Decision-makers in marketing are becoming more and more aware of the significance of maximizing shareholder benefit, which necessitates an assessment of the long-range effects of their activities on product-market reaction and shareholder engagement. Sales and marketing are two corporate operations

that have an impact on lead generation and revenue in an organization. A payment made for a marketing-related investment or expense is referred to as a marketing expenditure. Companies spend in marketing across a variety of sectors, including market study, development of products, advertising, sales, and services. Businesses frequently set aside a specific

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, July 5

Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 14

Accepted on 2023, July 29

amount from their budgets for marketing expenses. It is difficult to handle marketing expenditures effectively. The ability to respond quickly and professionally to changing circumstances requires proper management of marketing expenditures. A comprehensive plan that seamlessly directs and results in firm performance is necessary to maintain the balance between marketing expenses and sales (Hart & Zingales, 2017; Poddar, Yadav & Mukharji, 2014). There was a relationship between marketing expenses and sales as well as profitability of business performance (Haryanto & Retnaningrum, 2020). In a similar vein, there was either a positive or negative association between marketing expenses and firm performance. According to Dekimpe & Hanssens 1995, advertising contributes to sales in both the short- and long-term. Marketing expenses are considered expenses, which has a short-term negative impact on profitability (Jedidi, Mela & Gupta, 1999).

Advertising is one of the most important media of communication influencing the companies' performance in more than one way. But its influential strategic importance could be suppressed by other factors which also try to receive equal attention at time of deciding any sales and profitability strategy (Abdullahi, 2015). The link between advertising and promotion spending increased and future earnings was stronger and more immediate during recessions. Decreases in advertising and promotion spending during recessions had a delayed relationship with future earnings (Graham, & Frankenberger, 2011). The level of advertising expenditure had a significant positive effect on the intangible value of the firm (Hsu, & Jang,

2008). In essence, analyzing outcomes serves to continuously improve marketing effectiveness. The first objective for a new business was frequent recognition of the brand. Companies can evaluate their efforts by calculating the change in target marketing awareness from the beginning to the completion of a strategy. Highly established businesses may wish to increase client retention and track the outcomes via loyalty analysis. Companies should frequently monitor sales prior to, during, and following a marketing effort if their goal is to generate immediate revenue.

The impact of marketing expenditure on sales and profitability of manufacturing companies in Nepal has been examined in this study. Money spent on marketing activities is not a burden; rather, it increases sales volume by creating attraction towards the product (Lerner, 2010). Main objective of this study is to show that there exists a noteworthy relationship between marketing expenses and profitability of the firm, as well as a remarkable relationship between turnover and marketing expenses of the firm. This study also aims to give an idea that marketing expenses make a positive contribution to firm profits. The use of advertising and other promotional techniques to highlight a brand or the goods and services it can provide may be the main focus of marketing expenditures. The company's marketing budget focuses on the company's objectives and the most effective means of achieving them (Cooper & Kleinschmidt, 1995). Spending money on marketing can help a company's name become more well-known and provide

doors for the company to become more profitable (Anholt, 2006).

Extended marketing strategies should include creating a brand and sales initiatives that are concentrated on communicating the company's unique selling point. Companies face the danger of inducing a price orientation in the market if they employ promotions excessively. A balanced marketing budget is crucial to the company's prosperity. A company without a strong marketing strategy may find itself owing money to the corporation and unable to cover costs (Lantos, 2001). It may revert to owing clients, in which case the company's reputation and financial standing may suffer greatly. The effect of marketing spending on return was also favorable and significant for certain time (Srinivasan, Pauwels, Risso, & Hanssens 2009).

### **Review of Literature**

Haryanto and Retnaningrum (2020) stated that there was significant positive influence of marketing expenditure on net profit margin; but there was not any impact of marketing expenditure on return on assets (ROA). Likewise, the impact of marketing expenditure was positive and significant on return on investment (ROI) and return on equity (ROE). The study found that the marketing expenditure plays an important role on firm performance.

Manala and Atienza (2020) noted that there was a connection between advertising spending, income, and corporate profitability. According to the findings, advertising considerably and positively influenced company performance through revenue but not through net income. In the same way,

advertising can be a very effective strategy for businesses to increase their revenue and market share, but it does not always guarantee profit. However, to guarantee that high revenue generated from vigorous advertising effort converts into high profitability, further cost control techniques are required.

Buyukdag, Kaya and Kitapci (2019) agreed that marketing expenses significantly and favorably affect the variables for net profit and profit per share. Furthermore, there was a two-way link between these factors. While higher marketing costs result in higher net profits and earnings per share, higher net profits and earnings per share also contribute to higher marketing costs. Additionally, marketing expenses began to have a significant influence on net profit and earnings per share.

Shubita (2019) claimed that fluctuations in sales revenue could not be attributed to sales expenses. Sales expenditure fluctuations had a greater information content than sales expenditure levels in describing revenue from sales, indicating a substantial connection among sales expenditure variations and revenue from sales. Additionally, there was no discernible connection between sales revenue and sales expense levels, changes in sales expense, or both.

Chowdhury (2017) confirmed that there was a strong and positive correlation between advertising spending, sales volume, and net profit after tax. The study discovered a strong and positive correlation between the factors. Similarly, it demonstrated that the cost of advertising, volume of sales, and net profit after taxes

were all strongly associated with one another. As a result, the relationships were found to be linear, direct, and cyclic. In addition, the framework featured a loop of positive feedback whereby raising advertising spending raises revenue from sales and net profit after taxes.

Edeling and Fischer (2016) drew empirical conclusions about how marketing affected business value by integrating previous study data. The investigators explicitly performed a systematic review of earlier estimations regarding the flexibility of the stock market impact of marketing activities and assets related to marketing. However, the study found that advertising elasticities were lower in more concentrated industries and that marketing asset elasticities were higher during recession times. The study adopted only elasticities pertaining to the marketing-mix variable advertising in meta-analytic model.

McAlister, Srinivasan, Jindal and Cannella (2016) pointed out that there was a link between financial outcomes and marketing spending. Likewise, advertising expenditure and sales had positive link between them which has been consistently supported. The study illustrated that advertising affected firm's profitability. It also explained that advertising can extend the sales, thereby building firm value. It identifies differentiators and cost leaders on the basis of firms' reactions to a change in accounting regulations.

Konak (2015) asserted that there was no concave relationship between company performance and marketing expenses. However, spending on marketing and advertising was

acknowledged as a factor that had a short-term negative impact on profitability. On the other hand, it would add value in the long term. The research discovered that the dependent variables for ROA and ROE had a statistically significant positive relationship.

Agbeja, Oyedokun, Adelokun, Akinyemi and Daramola (2015) believed that there was a significant connection among marketing expenses and a company's profitability; and there was also a strong connection between turnover and marketing expenses. According to the report, a business maintained a system of advertising that was both successful and affordable, with a focus on hiring people of high caliber. In the same way, the advertising system ought to be managed by a system that promotes the standing of the business and its product(s).

Banerjee and Siddhanta (2015) emphasized that there was an interconnection between marketing, sales promotion, and profit in the sector; however, there was practically no evidence that there was a causal connection going in both directions. Instead, it appeared that advertisements had a long-term impact on revenue. However lengthy, the strategy of spending more money on advertising aids in the development of a company's image as well as a useful way to provide long-term benefits in terms of sales and loyalty to the brand.

Porto and Lima (2015) claimed that there was a nonlinear connection between the marketing strategy and each customer's level of buying, the amount of sales, and number of customers. The findings indicate that each of the variables

that are dependent are strongly impacted by the marketing strategy, particularly brand and pricing, in a nonlinear manner with good variable fits. Similarly, for the companies, their combined impact creates economies of size, and it encourages every customer to gradually buy a greater quantity of goods.

Sharma and Kapur (2014) showed both the long and short-run aspects of the relationship between sales and advertising spending. The study demonstrated how the size of the business affected the relationship between advertising spending and sales. These authors found that, in larger businesses, there was a reciprocal connection between advertising and sales; but in smaller businesses, long-term sales growth resulted in lower advertising spending. Likewise, they did not play a significant role in the total increase in advertising expenditures of the business.

Singh, Sharma and Mahendru (2011) stated that sales in businesses were what drive profit and advertising. The authors discovered that sales induced advertising, profits caused advertising, and profits also caused sales. However, the study demonstrated the relationship between profit sales and advertising in particular, demonstrating how the position of one year's sales impacted its previous year's profit as well as how advertisements impacted sales and profit over the previous years. The study also discovered that a company's sales were influenced by its past sales as well as by its own advertisements.

Joshi and Hanssens (2010) highlighted the enduring link between advertising spending and market capitalization. The authors contended that,

in addition to its indirect effects on sales revenue and profit response, advertising could also have a direct impact on valuation. In the same way, the study discovered a correlation between advertising spending and a firm's market value as well as an investor response effect of advertising spending beyond its anticipated effects through an increase in revenue and profit.

Ataman, Heerde and Mela (2010) claimed that there were the long-term consequences of advertising on sales and pricing elasticity. The study observed the effect of marketing investment over a long period of time. On the other hand, eliminating for short-term sales spikes produced price reduction, and showed that all parts of the marketing mix revealed a positive short-term direct influence on sales, especially distribution and line length. Similar to base sales, the marketing mix also had indirect effects due to price response.

There had been a significant number of empirical studies examining the relationship between marketing expenses and corporate financial metrics. Financial metrics had usually included Tobin's Q, ROA, ROE, market-to-book ratio, and various sorts of profit can be ratios or numbers. It was determined that marketing expenses had a favorable effect on the market value of the company. Similarly, it was recommended that the amount spent on marketing activities had a very good impact on the companies' performance.

But it still raises the question: has increasing marketing expenditure always produced a positive result? What is the right level at which a company should

invest in marketing expenditures to increase sales and profitability? There is also the question: is the impact of marketing expenditure on sales and profitability always linear? To find out the answers to these questions, we conducted this study using the conventional least square method of regression analysis.

**Method**

This research examined the influence of marketing expenditure on firm performance in manufacturing companies in Nepal. This study was quantitative and based on a positivist philosophy of research. This section includes research design, population and sample, nature and sources of data, methods of data analysis, and an econometric model.

**Research Design**

A quantitative research design was applied since the data used in this study were purely quantitative. The objective of this research was to investigate the impact of marketing expenditure on firm performance, which could be obtained through statistical operations.

**Population and Sample**

The population of this study included all manufacturing companies in Nepal. The sample of this study was only six manufacturing companies, namely Bottlers Nepal (Balaju) Ltd., Himalayan

Distillery Ltd., Nepal Lube Oil Ltd., Shivam Cement Ltd., Uniliver Nepal Ltd., and Bottlers Nepal (Tarai) Ltd., due to the non-listing of the other companies and so the unavailability of their data.

**Nature and Sources of Data**

This study was based on secondary data collected from six listed manufacturing companies for six years, from 2016/17 to 2021/22. The variables used in the study were gross profit margin (GPM), net profit margin (NPM), return on assets (ROA), return on equity (ROE), and marketing expenditure (ME). The data were secondary, and these data were gathered from the audited annual reports of the respective companies.

**Method of Data Analysis**

A descriptive statistic, correlation analysis, and simple linear and non-linear regression were applied to analyze the data.

**Econometric Model**

The econometric model applied in the study investigated the relationship between marketing expenditures and profitability. When suitable econometric tools are used, they determine the causal connection between the two variables that seem to run in opposite directions. For this purpose, the following models were applied.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{GPM}_{it} &= a+b_1\text{ME}_{it}+b_2\text{ME}^2_{it}+b_3\text{ME}^3_{it}+e_{it} \dots\dots\dots 1 \\
 \text{NPM}_{it} &= a+b_1\text{ME}_{it}+b_2\text{ME}^2_{it}+b_3\text{ME}^3_{it}+e_{it} \dots\dots\dots 2 \\
 \text{ROA}_{it} &= a+b_1\text{ME}_{it}+b_2\text{ME}^2_{it}+b_3\text{ME}^3_{it}+e_{it} \dots\dots\dots 3 \\
 \text{ROE}_{it} &= a+b_1\text{ME}_{it}+b_2\text{ME}^2_{it}+b_3\text{ME}^3_{it}+e_{it} \dots\dots\dots 4
 \end{aligned}$$

Here,

$GPM_{it}$  = Gross Profit Margin of Company i at t-time

$NPM_{it}$  = Net Profit Margin of Company i at t-time

$ROA_{it}$  = Return on Assets of Company i at t-time

$ROE_{it}$  = Return on Equity of Company i at t-time

$ME_{it}$  = Marketing Expenditure of Company i at t-time

**Results and Discussion**

This section provides systematic presentation and analysis of secondary data collected from six manufacturing companies in Nepal. The study used descriptive statistics, correlation analysis, and simple linear and non-linear regression models to measure the influence of marketing expenditure on firm performance. The study analyzed how marketing expenditure affects to sales, gross profit (GP), profit after tax (PAT), earning per share (EPS), gross profit margin (GPM), net profit margin (NPM), return on assets (ROA), and return on equity (ROE). Here is the data recapitulate recorded by listed manufacturing

companies in the year 2016 to 2022. The purpose of this section is to provide an apparent and advisable understanding of the findings of the study.

**Descriptive Statistics**

The number of observations, minimum and maximum values, means, and standard deviations of the variables under investigation made up the descriptive statistics used in this study. Descriptive statistics offer data in a concise and comprehensible style, which is typically simpler to analyze and understand. Table 1 displays descriptive statistics for both dependent and independent variables over the course of the study.

**Table 1**  
*Descriptive Statistics of Study Variables*

Variables	Minimum	Maximum	Mean	St. Dev.
Sales revenue	632	12495	5481	3324
Gross Profit	220	4074	1970	1074
Profit After Tax	-62	1542	631	462
Earnings Per Share	-32	1675	342	415
Gross Profit Margin	24	61	38	10
Net Profit Margin	-1	28	11	7
Return on Assets	-1	43	16	13
Return on Equity	-2	107	28	20
Marketing Expenditure	141	1697	639	433

*Note.* Author’s calculation using SPSS 27



Table 1 shows that average sales revenue of the sample companies during the study period was 5481 million with maximum value of 12495 million, minimum value of 632 million and standard deviation was 3324 million. It indicated high degree of variation in data among the sample companies. The maximum value of gross profit was 4074 with minimum value of 220 million and standard deviation was 1074. The average value of gross profit was 1970. Likewise, profit after tax was 1542 million with maximum value, -62 million was minimum value, average value of profit after tax was 631 million and standard deviation was 462 million. In here, minimum value of profit after tax was negative because it was computed deducting deferred tax so the negative value was found. The average value of earning per share was 342 million with maximum value of 1675 million, minimum value of -32 million; and standard deviation was 415 million. The maximum value of gross profit margin was

61 percent with minimum value of 24 percent; it is 38 percent of average value and 10 percent of standard deviation. Similarly, maximum value of net profit margin was 28 percent with minimum value -1 percent, and average value and standard deviation 11 and 7 percent respectively. Here, average value of return on assets was 16 percent with maximum value of 43 percent, minimum value was -1 percent; and standard deviation was 13 percent. Likewise, return on equity was 107 percent with maximum value, and -2 percent was minimum value, average value and standard deviation was 28 and 20 percent respectively. In the above sample, average marketing expenditure was 639 million with maximum value of 1697 million, minimum value of 141 million and standard deviation was 433 million. This descriptive statistic of study variables indicated that there was high degree of variation in data among the sample companies.

**Table 2**

*Correlation Matrix of Study Variables*

Variables	Sales	GP	PAT	EPS	GPM	NPM	ROA	ROE	ME
Sales	1.00								
GP	.87**	1.00							
PAT	.61**	.84**	1.00						
EPS	0.05	0.19	.32*	1.00					
GPM	-.33*	0.08	.40*	0.24	1.00				
NPM	0.14	.45**	.78**	.37*	.78**	1.00			
ROA	-0.26	0.08	.43**	.40*	.85**	.76**	1.00		
ROE	-0.25	0.04	.39*	.60**	.77**	.77**	.90**	1.00	
ME	.75**	.54**	0.24	0.07	-.44**	-0.06	-.35*	-0.26	1.00

Note. \*\* correlation significant at 0.01 level and \* correlation significant at 0.05 level

Table 2 shows the correlation between study variables. Marketing expenditure was an independent variable, and sales revenue (sales), gross profit (GP), profit after tax (PAT), earnings per share (EPS), gross profit margin (GPM), net profit margin (NPM), return on assets (ROA), and return on equity (ROE) were dependent variables. By analyzing the data,

it was found that marketing expenditure had a negative relationship with GPM, NPM, ROA, and ROE and a positive relationship with sales, GP, PAT, and EPS. From the correlation table, it was found that marketing expenditure increased sales revenue, gross profit, profit after tax, and earnings per share for the companies.

**Table 3**  
*Regression of Sales Revenue on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj. R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	1995	5.45(<0.001)	-	-	38(<0.001)	49.1	2371
Quadratic	138	12.24(0.001)	0.004(0.053)	-	21(<0.001)	53.1	2278
Cubic	-3408	32.40(0.001)	-0.032(0.013)	1.074E-5(0.028)	18.2(<0.001)	58.2	2149

Note. Figures in parentheses include p-values

Table 3 shows the relationship between sales and marketing expenditures (ME). The relationship was measured using linear, quadratic, and cubic regression models. All coefficients in the cubic model were statistically significant. The value of the adjusted R square of this model was the highest, and the value of the standard error of the estimate was the lowest. So, the best model was cubic. The relationship between sales and marketing expenditures is cubic or non-linear.

From this result, it was confirmed that there is a non-linear relationship between marketing expenditure and sales revenue for the sample companies. The increase in marketing expenditure, of course, increases sales, but only at a certain level; not at all levels or always. At a certain level, sales may also decline. The optimal level of marketing expenditure is that which maximizes sales. In the long term, when marketing expenditures are increased, sales should decrease over some interval. This result affirms the finding of Chowdhury (2017).

**Table 4**  
*Regression of Gross Profit on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	1164	1.23(0.001)	-	-	12.54(0.001)	23.8	938
Quadratic	419	3.99(0.007)	-0.002(0.049)	-	8.89(<0.001)	29.9	899
Cubic	-1632	15.64(<0.001)	-0.018(<0.001)	6.209E-6(<0.001)	12.69(<0.001)	48.7	770

Note. Figures in parentheses include p-values.

Table 4 shows the relationship between gross profit (GP) and marketing expenditure (ME). All the coefficients of the linear model were significant. But the standard error was higher than in the cubic model. Likewise, the co-efficient (P-value) of the quadratic model was significant, but the standard error was higher than that of the cubic model. The above table shows that the relation between GP and ME was statistically significant in the cubic model, and the standard error was also low in this model compared to the linear and cubic models. The adjusted R square was also higher than other models, so the best model

was the cubic model. The relationship between GP and ME is cubic or non-linear.

From this result, it was found that there is a non-linear relationship between gross profit and marketing expenditure for the sample companies. It indicates that there is a certain level of marketing expenditure that maximizes the gross profit of the companies. On the same hand, the increases in marketing expenditure increase gross profit up to a certain level; after that, the gross profit may also decline. It supports the diseconomies concept of economics.

**Table 5**

*Regression of Profit after Tax on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	528	0.16(0.364)	-	-	0.85(0.364)	-0.4	463
Quadratic	185	1.42(0.047)	-0.001(0.068)	-	2.23(0.123)	6.2	447
Cubic	-864	7.34(<0.001)	- 0.009(<0.001)	3.176E- 6(<0.001)	7.06(<0.001)	32.9	378

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

Table 5 shows the relationship between profit after tax (PAT) and marketing expenditure (ME). All the coefficients of the linear model are not significant. Likewise, all the coefficients of quadratics are also not significant. But all coefficients in the cubic model were statistically significant. In the cubic model, the standard error was also low compared to other models, and the adjusted R square was also higher, so the best model was

cubic. The relationship between PAT and ME was cubic or non-linear.

The result shows that the increase in marketing expenditure also increases profit after tax, but after a certain level, it may also decline. However, in the long term, when marketing expenditure is increased, profit after tax will decrease over some interval of time period.

**Table 6***Regression of Earning Per Share on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	377	- 0.05(0.735)	-	-	0.12(0.735)	-2.4	420
Quadratic	386	- 0.09(0.895)	2.011E- 5(0.959)	-	0.06(0.944)	-5.4	426
Cubic	16	2.02(0.282)	-0.003(0.240)	1.121E- 6(0.231)	0.53(0.662)	-3.9	423

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

In Table 6, the relationship between earnings per share (EPS) and marketing expenditures (ME) is shown. All the coefficients of the models were

insignificant. This result shows that there was no relationship between earnings per share (EPS) and marketing expenditure (ME) of the sample companies.

**Table 7***Regression of Gross Profit Margin on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	45	-0.01(0.002)	-	-	10.63(0.002)	20.6	9
Quadratic	43	-0.01(0.695)	-3.311E- 6(0.682)	-	5.26(0.010)	18.8	9
Cubic	26	0.09(0.009)	0.000(0.003)	5.280E- 8(0.004)	7.66(<0.001)	35.1	8

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

In Table 7, the relationship between gross profit margin (GPM) and marketing expenditure (ME) is shown. The co-efficient of the linear model was significant, but the adjusted R square was low compared to the cubic model. Likewise, the coefficient of the quadratic model was insignificant. But all coefficients in the cubic model were statistically significant. Similarly, the adjusted R square of the cubic model was also higher than the linear and quadratic models. So, the best model was the cubic. The relationship between GPM and ME was cubic or non-linear.

From this result, it is confirmed that there was a non-linear relationship between the gross profit margin and marketing expenditure of the sample companies. It indicates that there is a definite level of marketing expenditure that maximizes the gross profit margin of the companies. The increases in marketing expenditure increase gross profit margin up to a certain level; after that, gross profit margin may also decline. It supports the diseconomies concept of economics.

**Table 8**

*Regression of Net Profit Margin on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	14	-0.01(0.101)	-	-	2.84(0.101)	4.7	7
Quadratic	10	0.01(0.363)	-9.180E-6(0.175)	-	2.42(0.104)	7.1	7
Cubic	-6	0.10(<0.001)	0.000(<0.001)	5.002E-8(0.001)	6.89(<0.001)	32.3	6

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

Table 8 shows the relationship between net profit margin (NPM) and marketing expenditure (ME). The coefficient of the linear model was insignificant. Likewise, the coefficient of the quadratic model was also insignificant. But all the coefficients of the cubic model were statistically significant. In the same vein, the adjusted R square was also higher than the linear and quadratic models, so the best model was cubic. The relationship between NPM and ME was cubic or non-linear.

It indicates that there is a certain level of marketing expenditure that maximizes the net profit margin of the companies. The increases in marketing expenditure increase the net profit margin because marketing expenditure enhances the product image and attracts potential customers. So, it increases the net profit margin of the companies. But up to a certain level, it leads to an increase in net profit margin; after a certain level, it would decline. It supports the diseconomies concept of economics. This result contradicts with the finding of Haryanto and Retnaningrum (2020).

**Table 9**

*Regression of Return on Assets on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	25	-0.01(0.005)	-	-	9.04(0.005)	17.9	12
Quadratic	25	-0.02(0.367)	2.017E-6(0.853)	-	4.42(0.019)	15.6	12
Cubic	11	0.07(0.187)	0.000(0.091)	4.424E-8(0.082)	4.21(0.012)	20.6	11

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

Table 9 shows the relationship between return on assets (ROA) and marketing expenditure (ME). The coefficient of the linear model was significant. But the coefficient of the

quadratic model was insignificant. Likewise, all the coefficients of the cubic model were also statistically insignificant. So, the best model was linear because the coefficient of linear model was significant.

The relationship between ROA and ME was linear.

The above results show that the coefficients of the quadratic and cubic models

were statistically insignificant. It indicates that if marketing expenditure is increased, return on assets is decreased, or vice versa. This result is in contrast with the conclusion of Konak (2015).

**Table 10**

*Regression of Return on Equity on Marketing Expenditure*

Model	Constant	ME	ME <sup>2</sup>	ME <sup>3</sup>	F-value	Adj.R <sup>2</sup>	SEE
Linear	38	-0.02(0.042)	-	-	4.46(0.042)	8.5	19
Quadratic	37	-0.01(0.677)	-1.752E-6(0.923)	-	2.17(0.129)	6	20
Cubic	11	0.134(0.112)	0.000(0.066)	7.810E-8(0.065)	2.77(0.057)	13	19

*Note.* Figures in parentheses include p-values.

In Table 10, the relationship between return on equity (ROE) and marketing expenditure (ME) is shown. The coefficient of the linear model was significant. On the other hand, the coefficients of quadratic and cubic models were statistically insignificant. So, the best model was linear, and the relationship between ROE and ME was linear.

The above results show that the coefficients of the quadratic and cubic models were statistically insignificant. It shows that increasing marketing expenses result in a fall in return on equity or inversely.

All the above tables 3 to 10, show the regression relationship of dependent variables (Sales, Gross Profit (GP), Profit after Tax (PAT), Earnings per Share (EPS), Gross Profit Margin (GPM), Net Profit Margin (NPM), Return on Assets (ROA), and Return on Equity (ROE)) with independent variables (Marketing Expenditure). As a result, increase in marketing expenditure also increases sales and profitability, but only at a certain level.

After a certain level, sales and profitability may also decline. The optimal level of marketing expenditure maximizes sales and profitability. In the long term, when marketing expenditures are increased, sales and profitability should decrease over some interval. Companies face the danger of inducing a price orientation in the market if they employ promotions excessively. A balanced marketing budget is crucial to the company's prosperity. With this view, the marketing manager should provide an accurate annual marketing budget that maximizes sales and profitability for the firm. The data shows that promotional activities continue to account for a significant share of every industry, whether it be in manufacturing or commerce. Companies' biggest challenge is figuring out how to change the expenditure on marketing in accordance with the business cycle (Peers, Heerde, & Dekimped, 2017). Therefore, to estimate a company's sales prediction, a marketing manager should compute expected sales for the company, in the same vein, he

computes the impact of variables. Similarly, he also predicts the market share generated by marketing costs to be suffered. Likewise, a marketing manager should calculate the necessary sales volume at a specific price point and marketing spend level to fulfill desired goals.

### Conclusion

This study has examined the impact of marketing expenditure on sales and profitability of six manufacturing companies in Nepal that were listed on NEPSE. In order to achieve this objective, descriptive statistics, correlation analysis, and simple linear and non-linear regression were applied for the analysis of the data. According to the results, the study concludes that there is a non-linear relationship between marketing expenditure on sales and profitability. It indicates that there is a certain level of marketing expenditure that maximizes sales and profits. Sales and profitability may start to drop after a certain level. This study has used the conventional least square method of regression analysis; however, results could have been improved

by employing alternative regression techniques, such as the panel dynamic model, random effects approach, and generalized ways of movement. The study also has used multiple independent variable to measure exact and accurate impact of marketing expenditure on companies' performance. But it ought to be noted that potential data or market changes could weaken or strengthen the validity of the conclusions drawn from the analysis used in the current study. Additionally, due to time restrictions and data unavailability, not all of manufacturing companies could be included in the study. Due to restrictions on the availability of data, the study could not be expanded to include additional countries. Further research could be done based on the limitations of this study in an effort to overcome those limitations. Researchers may try to extend this study by comparing and contrasting the impact of marketing expenditure on sales and profitability of manufacturing companies across diverse companies in Nepal. Along the same lines, researchers can evaluate and compare its influence across various countries.

### References

- Abdel-Khalik, A. R. (1975). Advertising effectiveness and accounting policy. *The Accounting Review*, 50(4), 657-670.
- Abdullahi, D. A. U. D. A. (2015). Effect of advertising on the sales revenue and profitability of selected food and beverages firms in Nigeria [Unpublished post graduate dissertation]. Ahmadu Bello University.
- Agbeja, O., Adelakun, O. J., & Akinyemi, D. (2015). Analysis of the effect of advertising on sales and profitability of company. *International Journal of Novel Research in Marketing Management and Economics*, 2(3), 81-90.
- Anholt, S. (2006). *Brand new justice*. Routledge.

- Ataman, M. B., Van Heerde, H. J., & Mela, C. F. (2010). The long-term effect of marketing strategy on brand sales. *Journal of Marketing Research*, 47(5), 866-882.
- Banerjee, N., & Siddhanta, S. (2015). An empirical investigation on the impact of marketing communication expenditure on firms' profitability: Evidence from India. *Global Business Review*, 16(4), 609-622.
- Buyukdag, N., Kaya, A., & Kitapci, O. (2019). The effect of marketing expenditure on business performance: Time series analysis on causality. *Journal of Applied Economics and Business Research*, 9(4), 197-211.
- Chowdhury, S. R. (2017). Measuring the relationship among the advertisement expenditure, sales revenue and profit on steel industries and banking industries in Bangladesh. *European Journal of Business and Management*, 9(9), 1-5.
- Cooper, R., & Kaplan, R. S. (1988). Measure costs right: Make the right decisions. *Harvard Business Review*, 66(5), 96-103.
- Cooper, R. G., & Kleinschmidt, E. J. (1995). Benchmarking the firm's critical success factors in new product development. *Journal of Product Innovation Management*, 12(5), 374-391.
- Dekimpe, M. G., & Hanssens, D. M. (1995). The persistence of marketing effects on sales. *Marketing Science*, 14(1), 1-21.
- Edeling, A., & Fischer, M. (2016). Marketing impact on firm value. *Journal of Marketing Research*, 53(4), 515-534.
- Graham, R. C., & Frankenberger, K. D. (2011). The earnings effects of marketing communication expenditures during recessions. *Journal of Advertising*, 40(2), 5-24.
- Hart, O., & Zingales, L. (2017). Companies should maximize shareholder welfare not market value. *Journal of Law, Finance and Accounting*, 2(1), 247-274.
- Haryanto, T., & Retnaningrum, M. (2020). The impact of marketing expenditure on firm performance. *Journal of Management Business*, 11(2), 188-201.
- Hossain, M. (2019). Effect of advertising expenses and sales incentives on financial performance: Dissecting the cases of two market leader. *Business and Economic Research*, 9(1), 69-83.
- Hsu, L. T. J., & Jang, S. S. (2008). Advertising expenditure, intangible value and risk: A study of restaurant companies. *International Journal of Hospitality Management*, 27(2), 259-267.
- Jedidi, K., Mela, C. F., & Gupta, S. (1999). Managing advertising and promotion for long-run profitability. *Marketing Science*, 18(1), 1-22.



- Joshi, A., & Hanssens, D. M. (2010). The direct and indirect effect of advertising spending on firm value. *Journal of Marketing*, 74(1), 20-33.
- Konak, F. (2015). The effect of marketing expenses on firm performance: Empirical evidence from the BIST textile, leather index. *Journal of Economics and Management*, 3(11), 1068-1071.
- Lantos, G. P. (2001). The boundaries of strategic corporate social responsibility. *Journal of Consumer Marketing*, 18(7), 595-632.
- Lerner, J. (2010). The future of public efforts to boost entrepreneurship and venture capital. *Small Business Economics*, 35, 255-264.
- Manala-O, S. D., & Atienza, R. P. (2020). Effect of advertising expenditure on firm performance of Filipino corporations: A two-stage least square analysis. *Business and Economics Review*, 30(1), 70-82.
- McAlister, L., Srinivasan, R., Jindal, N., & Cannella, A. A. (2016). Advertising effectiveness: The moderating effect of firm strategy. *Journal of Marketing Research*, 53(2), 207-224.
- Mirza, H. H., Hussain, H., & Gull, W. (2022). Impact of advertising expenditure on firm performance: Evidence from listed companies of Pakistan. *International Journal of Financial Engineering*, 9(03), 2250012.
- Peers, Y., Van Heerde, H. J., & Dekimpe, M. G. (2017). Marketing budget allocation across countries: The role of international business cycles. *Marketing Science*, 36(5), 792-809.
- Poddar, S., Yadav, S., & Mukharji, S. (2014). *Marketing Strategies and Plans*. University of Mumbai.
- Porto, R. B., & Rocha Lima, S. D. (2015). Nonlinear impact of the marketing mix on brand sales performance. *Brazilian Business Review*, 12(5), 57-77.
- Sharma, S., & Kapur, D. (2014). Causality relationship between advertising expenditure and sales: A study of Indian service sector. *Management and Labour Studies*, 39(3), 275-292.
- Singh, S., Sharma, G. D., & Mahendru, M. (2011). Causal effect of advertisement on profit and sales. *Available at SSRN 1905424*.
- Srinivasan, S., Pauwels, K., Silva-Risso, J., & Hanssens, D. M. (2009). Product innovations, advertising, and stock returns. *Journal of Marketing*, 73(1), 24-43.
- Subita, M. F. (2019). Specification of the relationship between the sales expenses and the sales in Jordanian companies. *Innovative Marketing*, 15(4), 57-65.

## Need of State-led Strategy for Economic Development in Nepal<sup>1</sup>

Purushotam Nepal and Niresh Chaudhary

Instructors at Department of Economics, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari, Sunsari

email: *pnepal.nepal@gmail.com*

*chaudharyniresh31@gmail.com*

### Abstract

The purpose of this study is to explore the way and importance of state-led strategical development in the context of Nepal. Basically, there are three different methods of development strategies that are commonly practiced in the countries of the world. They are state-led strategy, individual-led strategy, and NGO-led strategy of the economic development. Among them, the basic way of development is the investment through the government fund. To find which of these strategies is appropriate in context of Nepal, this review study was conducted. It has also used the simple statistical method of analysis with the help of the secondary data. The findings are presented in table and bar graph. The result of this analysis shows that the most appropriate development strategy is the investment through government organization especially in the initial phase of development of a country. So, it can be suggested that the state-led- strategy of development can be adopted for economic development of Nepal.

*Keywords:* developing countries, economic development, state-led strategy

### Introduction

There are different development strategies practiced in different countries of the world at different periods of time and various stages of economic development. Before Adam Smith (1776), there was Laissez faire economy in practice in which most of the countries of the world practiced individual-led strategy of investment and development. At that time, governments used to collect tax; and with that money the government used to protect the country from external attack and maintain peace and order inside the country. As a result, no development work was carried out by the government. But the scene is different in

the modern-day economy and state management. Goodland and Ladec (2023) argued that good manpower (educated, trained, skillful, experienced, specialized) is required for the development of the country, and it is the responsibility of the state to plan, develop and manage these necessities for the economic development of the nation. In the absence of such manpower the development of the country is impossible.

After Alfred Marshall, a neo-classical economist, with the development of concept of welfare state, the government of different countries started to feel the responsibility and the government started

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, June 22

Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 15

Accepted on 2023, July 29

to make investment in those areas where the government can provide service to the people to gain popularity. It is known as state-led strategy of economic development. Boumol (2023) argued that the unemployment in the country can be reduced through state led strategy in the development of the country. It can provide employment to the people of all economic levels and all types of people on the basis of equality. The state can also bring the strategies that can promote such situations for employment and development.

Likewise, after the Second World War, which ended in 1945, and with the emergence of developed and developing countries, the developed world started to make investment in the developing countries through different NGOs and INGOs. It is known as NGO-led strategy of economic development. Including this one, generally there are three different types of development strategies in practice: state-led strategy in the economic development, individual-led strategy in the economic development, and NGO-led strategy in the economic development. These types developmental strategies are appropriate in different countries based on their level of development, type of geography and condition of the gross national production.

Nepal is a mixed economy, where private and public sector go side by side in both the investment and management of the economic sectors. It is widely believed that the development of Nepal is not complete and possible unless both the sectors are developed simultaneously. But, at the same time, Nepal is far behind in the infrastructural development as compared to other developing countries of the world. Therefore, for the initial speedy

development of all the sectors, the government must take the initiative and state-led strategy is essential today for its development (Acharya, 2006). In the same line of argument, Thomson (2023) pointed out that the deficit in the balance of payment can be reduced by following the state-led development strategy. It increases export and reduces import of the foreign goods which leads to speedy development of the country.

In this context, this article has tried to find whether the state-led strategy is really appropriate approach to overcome the difficulties of developing countries like Nepal or not. Thus, the objective of the study is to find the most appropriate development strategy in the poor and underdeveloped countries like Nepal.

### **Method**

This article follows qualitative research methodology. It has included the reviews of some theoretical perspectives in the development of a nation. Some subjective, objective and statistical data have also been collected and used. Secondary data have been taken under consideration to find the level of unemployment from 2018 to 2022. Similarly, the data from 2015/16 to 2020/21 have been used to show the import and export of Nepal along with deficit in the balance of payment. Statistical tools such as bar diagrams and pie-chart based on the objective data have been used to present the different relationships among the data. The relationship is both internal and external. The set of relationship which is considered important in the study has been examined with the help of tables, schedules, figures and diagrams. The data

related with foreign employment, domestic unemployment, export and import have been used to establish the importance of government led strategy in the development of Nepal.

### **Results and Discussion**

There are various areas of development and improvement in an economy for the economic development of the country. For the development of these areas in Nepal, the possible roles of a state-led development strategy are discussed in the following paragraphs. At first, the reasons to use the state-led strategy in Nepal have been surveyed before the analysis of the data in consideration.

Firstly, national identity is an important aspect for a country to be economically developed. For the protection of its identity, the government can make the nationalistic plan and policy to produce goods that can be sold in the national and international markets. For example, the production of the curio goods with the emblem of Nepal can both promote and protect Nepali national identity (Shrestha, Adhikari, & Khadka, 2079). Similarly, Dhaka caps of Palpa, 'Bhojpure khukuri' from Bhojpur, 'metal pots' of Bhadgaun, and curio goods for the tourists are the good examples of Nepalese identity (Bista, 1996). Such type of industries can be established by the nation through state-led strategy. Other strategies of development may not have interest in producing the goods of national identity because they have their own interest; and they need more profit for their satisfaction.

Similarly, proper allocation of the economic resources is another important aspect where government-led strategy is

needful. For every developing nation, resources are scarce, and so they have to be utilized in a proper way. The resources available are to be allocated in such a way that they provide maximum benefit to the people (Graper, Mauro, Patt & Raphael, 2020). In the context of Nepal, too, resources are limited. So, they have to be allocated in such a way that the nation gets maximum benefit. So, there must be either direct or indirect control from the government over its resources. Government investment and control can help utilize the natural resources in a planned way. It also helps to meet the need of the people correctly.

Thirdly, government mechanism is very essential to co-ordinate the private and non-government sectors. The government alone may not be able to develop economy in a planned way (Warner, 2014). Therefore, private and non-governmental sectors can also be made useful for its development. The government should decide how and where the private and non-governmental organizations should be useful and utilized. If the private and non-governmental sectors are left uncontrolled, they become selfish and neglect the government to create the environment for their investment and make them irresponsible. Other sectors cannot keep the government sector under them; but it is only the government that can keep the individual and NGO under it (Hemming et al, 2006). So, the government led strategy is important as well as essential to keep other strategies under it.

Fourthly, Nepalese society consists of various groups of people. There are so-called high caste and low caste people, and rich and poor people. There are

people of sexual differences, lingual differences, religious differences, and other ethnic differences as well. The gap between the rich and the poor is increasing day by day. So, to bring about the social justice and equality the government led-strategy is essential (Acharya, 2006). The government can invest in those areas from which the people can get benefit. In the state-led strategy, all the productive units like production, consumption and distribution are all controlled by the government. On the other hand, social justice cannot be expected through private investment. The rich and the well to do people can make the investment, but the poor people cannot. As a result, low class people are exploited by the rich people. Therefore, to protect the poor and exploited the government-led strategical planning is necessary.

Fifth, people in Nepal have very little access to social service sectors such as health, education, training, drinking water, and sanitation. These sectors give return only in the long run because they need huge investment in the beginning, and they have long gestation period as well. So, the private sector, which is profit oriented, is not interested in making investment in these sectors. Even if they make investment in such sectors, their goods are very expensive which the poor people cannot afford (Hemming et al, 2006). Similarly, for the development of the basic economic infrastructures like road, rails, ropeways, electricity, and bridges, the government has to take the responsibility because without their development other sectors cannot get developed. Rapid development of the economy is possible only after the development of social service and economic infrastructure.

Sixth, the economic position of Nepal is far behind other countries where the per capita income of more than 50 percent people is less than 1 US dollar. According to Shrestha, Adhikari and Khadka (2079BS), 42% of people in Nepal lived below the poverty line. But today 80.40% people earn less than 5.50 dollar a day after Rwanda (93.40%) and Gambia (86.30%) (Acharya, 2006). For these reasons, to alleviate poverty, the government must make proper economic planning for its development. The other two strategies of development cannot be useful to alleviate poverty for they have their own interest rather than that of the common people. The government's role and responsibility are definitely more than that of individual and NGO-led strategy to alleviate poverty. The government, while making investment, will keep in mind the wellbeing and welfare of the individuals to alleviate poverty in the country (Hemming et al, 2006) which is simply out of mind in other strategies.

The seventh reason in favour of the state-led strategy for economic development is the need of the decrease in unemployment in the nation. Unemployment is the situation where people are willing and able to work but they are not able to find a job in the market. However, if a person leaves his job for certain reasons, they cannot be called as unemployed. If a person is voluntarily unemployed, then the person is not unemployed because he is not seeking jobs. Thus, by unemployment we mean involuntary unemployment (Shrestha, 2021).

Nepal is a country where there are very few industries. The industrial

development is very slow or we can say that it is almost nil. Due to the lack of proper industrialization different types of unemployment is found in Nepal: seasonal unemployment, frictional unemployment, under employment, open unemployment, cyclical unemployment, disguised unemployment, real wage unemployment, technological unemployment, and structural unemployment. Demand side unemployment is caused due to high rate of interest in the market, global recession and geographical unemployment. Since there is lot of unemployment proper planning has to be made by the government. The

formula to find unemployment rate is:  

$$\text{Unemployment rate} = \frac{\text{number of unemployed people}}{\text{labour force}} \times 100$$

Where,

$$\text{Labor Force} = \text{unemployed} + \text{employed persons}$$

The problem of unemployment is serious in Nepal. The reason for increasing poverty is also unemployment. Therefore, the problem of unemployment cannot be solved without state intervention into the economy. The following data show the major unemployment situation of youth in Nepal.

**Table 1**

*Unemployment Rate in Nepal*

Year	Percentage	Age Group
2018	19.83	15 to 60
2019	19.91	15 to 60
2020	24.08	15 to 60
2021	22.32	15 to 60

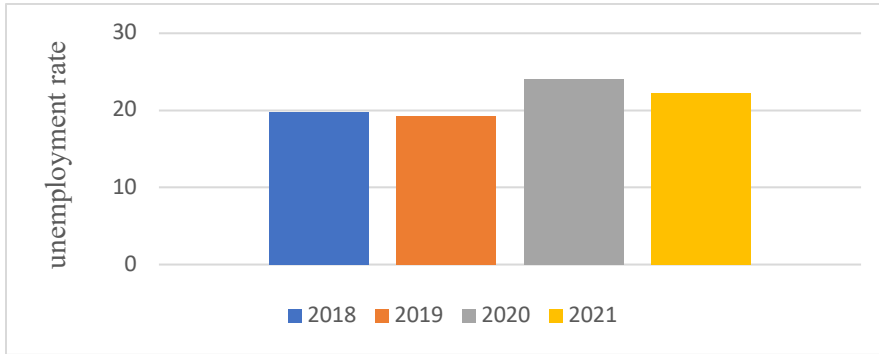
*Note.* Economic Survey 2020/21 MOF, Nepal

Table 1 shows the rate of unemployment in Nepal from 2018 to 2021. In 2018 the rate of unemployment of the people aged 15 to 60 was 19.83. Similarly, the rate of unemployment in 2019, 2020, and 2021 was 19.9 %, 24.08%

and 22.32 respectively. It shows the rate of unemployment is increasing every year. Therefore, it can be argued that the rate of unemployment can be reduced by following the state-led strategy in Nepal.

**Figure 1**

*Unemployment Rate in Nepal from 2018 to 2021*



The above data reveal the extent of unemployment in Nepal. In the context of Nepal more than three lakhs people enter the labour market every year. But the government of Nepal is not in a position to provide employment to the increasing labour force. For this reason, also, state-led strategy is necessary in Nepal. State-led strategy can consume more labors and many more people can get better employment opportunity.

The eighth reason that demands state-led economic strategy for the development of Nepal is that the government-led strategy is important to reduce the deficit in the balance of trade and balance of payment of the country. Every year Nepal imports huge amount of raw materials, semi-finished, finished goods, machinery items, and expensive

goods from other countries. The deficit in the balance of payment is increasing every year with India, the major trading partner of Nepal, as well as with other countries of the world. The easy entry of the products of multinational companies has made the competition difficult for the national companies (Shrestha, 2021). If the government cannot protect the domestic industries by patronizing them, the Nepalese industries have to face a great problem for our products will be more expensive than imported goods. To bring balance between the balance of trade and balance of payments, the government should establish industries and produce those goods that promote export and substitute import. The table below shows the situation of import and export from 2015/16 to 2020/21.

**Table 2**

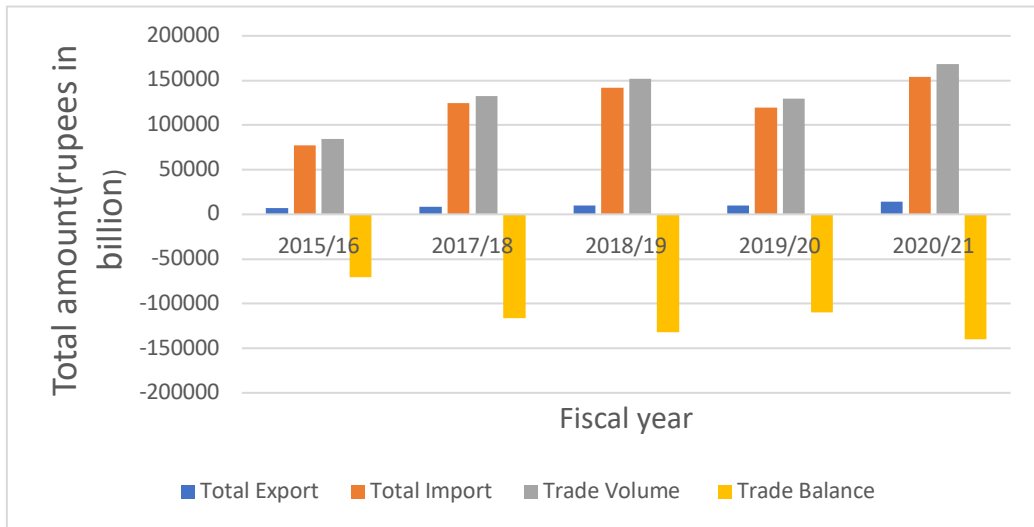
<i>Trade Balance</i>				Rs. in ten million
Fiscal Year	Total Export	Total Import	Trade Volume	Trade Balance
2015/16	7011.7	77359.9	84371.6	-70348.2
2017/18	8163.3	124282.7	132446.0	-116119.4
2018/19	9711.0	141853.5	151564.5	-132142.5

2019/20	9770.9	119679.9	129450.8	-109908.0
2020/21	14112.4	153983.7	168096.1	-139871.3

Note. Economic Survey 2020/21 MOF, Nepal

**Figure 2**

Trade Balance from 2015/16 to 2020/21



The figure above shows that the volume of trade in the fiscal year 2015/16 was 84371.6 crore which increased to Rs.151564.5 crore in fiscal year 2018/29. It is also clear from the figure that the trade deficit is increasing. The trade deficit was Rs.70348.2 crore in the fiscal year 2015/16 which increased to Rs. 139871.3 crore in the fiscal year 2020/2021. Although the volume of export is increasing, the volume of import is increasing more than the volume of export. As a result, the trade deficit is also increasing at the increasing rate.

But the recent (*Nepalnews 2023*) Nepal Rastra Bank report showed that the balance of payment has shown surplus by Rs. 45.87 billion by the end of mid-December 2022/23. According to the NRB's current microeconomic and financial situation of the report of mid-

December 2022/23, the BOP stayed at the surplus of 45.87 billion in the review period compared with the deficit of Rs. 195.01 billion in the same period of the previous fiscal year. In US dollar terms, the BOP has remained surplus of USD 1.64 billion in the same period of the previous fiscal year.

Similarly, the current account deficit has decreased by RS. 37.91billion from the deficit of Rs. 298.51 billion in the same period of the previous fiscal year. However, in the review period, capital transfer decreased from 25.3 percent to 3.47 percent and the net direct investment remained Rs. 604.9 million. The report showed that in the same period of the previous FY, capital transfer and net foreign direct investment (NFI) amounted to Rs. 4.64 billion and 7.07 billion respectively.



## Conclusion

The above discussion shows that Nepal is one of the poorest countries in the world where there is poverty, illiteracy, unemployment, insecurity, under development, and social injustice. On the top of that there is economic inequality between the people of rural and urban areas, and the people of the high and low classes. There is increasing dis-balance between the balance of trade and balance of payment between Nepal and other overseas countries. In this connection, the opinion of classical and neo-classical economists that the country can develop smoothly only if

there is no interference from the government is not, at least, applicable in the context of Nepal today. In the initial phase of development, for the infrastructural development of the nation the governmental control and investment is very essential. So, for the poor and underdeveloped country the role of government is very important. So, it is important to make the correction of the mistakes in the past and also to make the necessary changes of the government mechanism and start development through the process of decentralization and governmental investment.

## References

- Acharya, B. (2006). *Development sociology*. Student Books.
- Bhatia, H. L. (1993). *Public finance*. Vikash Publishing House.
- Bista, R. B. (1996). *Economics*. Heritage Publishers.
- Boumol, W. (1952). *Welfare economics and the theory of state*. <https://www.google.com/search?q=sci+hub&oq=sci&aqs=chrome.1.69i59l3j0i131i433i512j69i59j69i60l3.3632j0j7&sourceid=chrome&ie=UTF-8>
- Burke, M. A., & Ozdagli, A. (2020). Household inflation expectations and consumer spending: Evidence from panel data, *Working Papers*, No. 20-15, Federal Reserve Bank of Boston, Boston, MA, <https://doi.org/10.29412/res.wp.2020.15>
- Garper, V., Mauro, P., Pattillo, C., & Espinoza, R. (2020). Public investment for recovery. *IMF Journal*, 20, n. p. IMF Blog.
- Goodland, R., & Ledec, G. (2023). Ecological modelling. *Neo-classical Economists and Principles of Sustainable Development*, 38(1-2),19 -46.
- Hemming, R. et al. (2006). Public-private partnerships, government guarantees, and fiscal Risk. *International Monetary Fund*, 6, 19 -21.
- IMF. (2015). *Making public investment more efficient*. International Monetary Fund. <http://www.imf.org/external/np/pp/eng/2015/061115.pdf>
- Mainali A. K., & Dhungel, K. R. (2013). *Basic economics*. Ekta Books.
- MOF. (2019). *Economic survey 2018/19*. Ministry of Finance, Nepal. [https://www.mof.gov.np/uploads/document/file/compiled%20economic%20Survey%20english%207-25\\_20191111101758.pdf](https://www.mof.gov.np/uploads/document/file/compiled%20economic%20Survey%20english%207-25_20191111101758.pdf)

Satti, A. (2022). Impact of brand image on consumer buying behaviour. *International Journal of Creative Research Thought*, 10, 6-9.

Shapiro, E. (1996). *Macroeconomic analysis*. Galgotia Publication.

Shrestha, P. P. (2021). *Economics*. Advance Saraswoti Publication.

Sijapati, P., & Limbu, A. (2017). *Governing labour migration in Nepal*. Himal Kitab.

Singh, S. K. (1996). *Public finance in theory and practice*. S. Chand and Company.

Taylor, J. E. (2006). The new economics of labour migration process. *International Migration and Economic Development*, 15-19.

Thomson, H. (1997). Ignorance and ideological hegemony: A critique of neo-classical economics. *A Journal of Interdisciplinary Economics*, 8(4), n. p.

UNCTAD. (2009). *The role of public investment in social and economic development*.  
[https://unctad.org/system/files/official-document/webdiae20091\\_en.pdf](https://unctad.org/system/files/official-document/webdiae20091_en.pdf)

Warner, A. M. (2014). Public investment as an engine of growth. *IMF Journal*, 14, 3-8.

World Bank. (1991). *Nepal: Poverty and incomes*. [http://www.wds.worldbank.org/servlet/WDSContentServer/WDSP/IB/1999/09/17/000178830\\_98101901482637/Rendered/PDF/multi\\_page.pdf](http://www.wds.worldbank.org/servlet/WDSContentServer/WDSP/IB/1999/09/17/000178830_98101901482637/Rendered/PDF/multi_page.pdf)

## **Plasma Physics and Fusion Energy: A Promising Future for Sustainable Power Generation<sup>1</sup>**

Suman Dahal

Instructor at the Department of Physics, Koshi Saint James College, Itahari

email: *smnn.dhl@gmail.com*

### **Abstract**

The increasing global demand for electrical energy has led to a renewed interest in fusion research over the past couple of decades. As the world seeks environment-friendly and sustainable energy sources, fusion energy stands out as a potential solution to meet the ever-growing energy needs. Plasma physics and fusion energy research have gained significant momentum as potential solutions to address the ever-increasing global energy demand while mitigating environmental concerns. Fusion energy, mimicking the energy production mechanism of stars, holds immense promise as a safe, clean, and virtually limitless source of power. This research article provides an overview of plasma physics, explores the principles of fusion energy, and highlights the current advancements and challenges in this field. This research utilized a qualitative approach, incorporating a comprehensive literature review and data collection from scientific publications and databases. The findings were analyzed, synthesized, and interpreted, providing insights into the current state of plasma physics and fusion energy, including technological advancements, challenges, and future directions. It emphasizes the importance of continued research and development to unlock the full potential of fusion energy and pave the way toward a sustainable future.

*Keywords:* clean energy, fusion energy, plasma physics, stellarators, tokamaks

### **Introduction**

The global energy landscape is undergoing a transformative shift towards cleaner and more sustainable sources of power. Plasma physics and fusion energy research are paving the way for a new era of sustainable power generation (Smith, 2022). With a focus on clean and abundant sources of energy, scientists around the world are harnessing the immense potential of plasma—the fourth state of matter, to achieve controlled fusion reactions (Johnson et al., 2021). This article delves

into the captivating realm of plasma physics and fusion energy, exploring the fundamental principles, cutting-edge technologies, and the transformative impact that fusion energy can have on our planet's future.

Plasma, an ionized gas state characterized by its highly charged and dynamic nature, is abundant in the universe and holds great promise as an environment-friendly alternative to fossil fuels (Brown & Lee, 2020). Fusion, the process that powers the sun and other stars, occurs when

---

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023, June 24

Peer Reviewed on 2023, July 21

Accepted on 2023, July 29

light atomic nuclei combine, releasing a tremendous amount of energy (Jones, 2019). Scientists aim to recreate these conditions on earth by developing advanced technologies capable of controlling and confining plasma sustainably.

However, achieving controlled fusion reactions presents significant scientific and engineering challenges (Chen, 2018). Overcoming extreme temperatures, magnetic fields, and confinement methods required for sustained fusion reactions is a complex task. Nonetheless, progress has been made through experimental approaches such as tokamaks, stellarators, and laser-based fusion systems (Garcia & Nguyen, 2020). The potential benefits of fusion energy are immense, including virtually limitless fuel from hydrogen isotopes, minimal waste production, and no greenhouse gas emissions, making it a clean and sustainable energy source.

This article explores cutting-edge research, breakthrough technologies, and international collaborations propelling the field of plasma physics and fusion energy forward. It will delve into the challenges faced by researchers, the progress made in fusion experiments, and the potential timeline for realizing commercially viable fusion power plants. By shedding light on these advancements, it aims to highlight the critical role of plasma physics in achieving a sustainable and prosperous future through fusion energy.

### **Review of Literature**

The field of plasma physics and fusion energy has witnessed significant research and advancements over the years,

laying the groundwork for a promising future in sustainable power generation. In the literature, numerous studies have focused on understanding the fundamental principles of fusion reactions and exploring the potential of fusion energy as a clean and abundant source of electricity. Chen (1984) provided a comprehensive introduction to plasma physics and controlled fusion, offering insights into the underlying physics and the challenges associated with achieving sustained fusion reactions. This foundational work serves as a valuable resource for understanding the basics of plasma physics and fusion energy (Chen, 1984).

Researchers have also made substantial progress in developing advanced fusion devices and experimental reactors. The International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) project has garnered significant attention in the literature. ITER is a collaborative effort by several countries to build the world's largest fusion experiment, to demonstrate the scientific and technical feasibility of fusion energy. Numerous studies and reports discuss the design, engineering challenges, and potential impact of ITER on the path to commercial fusion power plants. These works contribute to a deeper understanding of the practical implementation of fusion energy and the ongoing efforts to overcome technical hurdles (ITER).

Furthermore, the literature review reveals ongoing research initiatives focused on addressing key challenges in plasma confinement and stability. The need for advanced materials capable of withstanding extreme conditions is a recurrent theme. Several studies investigate

novel materials, such as advanced ceramics and high-temperature superconductors, for plasma-facing components and magnetic confinement systems. These materials play a crucial role in ensuring the long-term operation and viability of fusion reactors. The exploration of advanced materials and the characterization of their properties form an essential part of the literature, providing insights into the engineering aspects of fusion energy (Plasma Physics Division of the European Physical Society).

Overall, the literature review highlights the substantial progress made in plasma physics and fusion energy research. It underscores the significance of foundational knowledge, the ongoing development of fusion devices like ITER, and the exploration of advanced materials. By synthesizing and analyzing the existing literature, this review establishes the context for the article and provides a comprehensive understanding of the current state of research and the challenges that scientists and engineers are tackling in pursuit of sustainable power generation through fusion energy.

### **Method**

This study utilized a qualitative approach, relying on secondary data sources to explore plasma physics and fusion energy. The research involved an extensive literature review, encompassing scholarly articles, research papers, books, and reputed online sources. This literature review served as the primary data source, providing a comprehensive understanding of the current knowledge in the field.

Data collection involved extracting relevant information from scientific publications, reports, conference

proceedings, and databases, covering theoretical models, experimental results, and technological advancements. Qualitative techniques were used to analyze the data, organizing and interpreting textual information to identify recurring themes and key concepts. Additionally, in-depth studies of notable fusion projects were conducted, shedding light on real-world applications and challenges.

Overall, this methodological approach yielded a comprehensive understanding of plasma physics and fusion energy, identified emerging trends, and provided valuable recommendations for future research and development endeavors.

### **Findings**

The research report on plasma physics and fusion energy provides valuable insights into the advancements and challenges in the field of fusion energy. The findings reveal significant progress in fusion technologies worldwide, with research efforts focused on achieving sustainable and clean energy generation. The following paragraphs highlight the advantages of fusion energy over other energy sources, advancements, ongoing research, and challenges in fusion energy across different regions and projects.

### **Advantages of Fusion Energy over other Energy Sources**

Fusion energy offers several significant advantages over conventional energy sources. Firstly, fusion fuel, such as deuterium and tritium, is derived from sources like sea water, providing an essentially limitless supply (National

Research Council, 2013; Dean, 2015). Deuterium is readily available in vast quantities in sea water, estimated to be enough to fuel fusion reactors for millions of years (National Research Council, 2013; Dean, 2015). Tritium can be generated within the fusion reactor itself through the interaction of neutrons with lithium, which is abundant in the Earth's crust. This abundance of fusion fuel ensures a long-term and sustainable energy source without concerns of resource depletion (National Research Council, 2013; Dean, 2015).

Secondly, fusion reactions release energy at an incredibly high density, exceeding the energy output of conventional chemical reactions like burning fossil fuels (Dean, 2015). The energy generated by fusion comes from the conversion of a small amount of fuel mass into energy, as described by Einstein's famous equation,  $E = mc^2$ . This high energy density offers the potential for highly efficient energy conversion and significant power generation with relatively small amounts of fuel input (Dean, 2015).

Furthermore, fusion energy is environment-friendly. Fusion reactions do not emit greenhouse gases, such as carbon dioxide, methane, or nitrogen oxides, which contribute to climate change (Geng et al., 2020). The fusion fuel, deuterium, can be extracted from sea water without significant environmental impact (Fishbach et al., 2019). Tritium, which is a radioactive byproduct of fusion, has a short half-life and can be safely contained within the fusion reactor, minimizing any long-term environmental concerns (Geng et al., 2020; Fishbach et al., 2019). Compared to conventional energy sources that rely on

fossil fuels, fusion energy presents a cleaner and more sustainable option, helping to mitigate climate change and reduce air pollution (Geng et al., 2020; Fishbach et al., 2019).

Safety is also a notable advantage of fusion energy. Fusion reactors do not operate with a self-sustaining chain reaction, minimizing the risk of accidents and catastrophic events associated with nuclear fission reactors (Fishbach et al., 2019). Additionally, fusion energy does not require fissile materials, reducing nuclear proliferation concerns (Weller et al., 2016). This aspect enhances the safety and security of fusion energy as a viable power source (Weller et al., 2016).

Moreover, fusion energy enhances energy security by offering decentralized and secure sources (Dunne, 2014; Greenwald et al., 2019). The availability of fusion fuel from sea water provides a decentralized energy supply, reducing dependence on limited regional resources or politically unstable regions (Dunne, 2014; Greenwald et al., 2019). These aspects contribute to a more stable and secure energy landscape.

In this way, fusion energy offers abundant fuel supply from sources like sea water, high energy density for efficient power generation, environmental friendliness with minimal greenhouse gas emissions and waste production, enhanced safety, reduced nuclear proliferation risks, and improved energy security. While significant technical and engineering challenges remain, ongoing research and development efforts in the field of fusion energy aim to overcome these hurdles and harness the vast potential of fusion as a

clean and sustainable energy source for the future.

These findings highlight the importance of fusion energy over other energy sources. However, further research and development are needed to realize the full potential of fusion energy.

### **Advancements in Fusion Energy**

In recent years, significant advancements have been made in fusion energy research, bringing us closer to the realization of practical fusion power. Experimental progress has been notable, with fusion devices achieving higher levels of fusion power and performance (Joint European Torus [JET], 1997; Korea Superconducting Tokamak Advanced Research [K-STAR], 2020). Advanced plasma confinement techniques, such as the H-mode and advanced tokamak configurations, have been developed to improve plasma stability and confinement, thereby increasing fusion energy density (National Research Council, 2013; Weller et al., 2016).

Another area of progress lies in stellarator designs, with modern concepts like Wendelstein 7-X utilizing advanced magnetic field shaping to enhance plasma confinement and reduce disruptions, bringing them closer to steady-state operation (National Research Council, 2013; Weller et al., 2016). Advances in superconducting magnet technology have also played a crucial role, enabling the construction of larger and more powerful fusion devices, providing stronger magnetic fields for confining the hot plasma (National Research Council, 2013; Weller et al., 2016).

Extensive research is being conducted to develop materials capable of withstanding the extreme conditions inside a fusion reactor, such as high heat, high-energy neutrons, and radiation. Innovative materials like advanced ceramics and high-temperature superconductors are being explored (National Research Council, 2013; Weller et al., 2016). Additionally, international collaboration has emerged as a key driver of progress in fusion research, with initiatives like the ITER project bringing together countries worldwide to construct a large-scale tokamak fusion device and demonstrate the feasibility of fusion power (National Research Council, 2013; Weller et al., 2016).

Furthermore, beyond conventional magnetic confinement fusion, innovative fusion concepts are being explored. Inertial confinement fusion (ICF) involves rapidly compressing and heating a small fuel pellet using laser or particle beams, while magnetic confinement concepts like compact fusion reactors and fusion-fission hybrid systems are also under investigation (Dean, 2015; National Research Council, 2013).

In addition to these advancements in fusion energy, some remarkable achievements and ongoing research projects in different scientific communities are also discussed. The United States has been actively involved in fusion energy research, with notable advancements in various experimental approaches. One significant research project is the National Ignition Facility (NIF) at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. The NIF utilizes inertial confinement fusion (ICF) techniques, aiming to achieve controlled fusion reactions through the compression

and heating of fusion fuel. The facility has made substantial progress in understanding the behavior of high-energy-density plasmas, bringing us closer to achieving practical fusion energy (Lindl et al., 2004). In 2023, the US Department of Energy (DOE) announced a \$500 million investment in fusion energy research.

China has also made remarkable progress in fusion energy research. The Experimental Advanced Superconducting Tokamak (EAST), also known as artificial sun, located in Hefei, is one of China's most significant contributions to the field. EAST has achieved remarkable plasma confinement and temperature milestones, furthering our understanding of fusion physics and contributing to the development of tokamak technology (Li et al., 2019). China's commitment to fusion energy research, demonstrated by its investments and collaborative projects, solidifies its position as a major player in advancing fusion energy technologies. On 12 April, 2023, EAST set a new world record and successfully achieved a steady-state high-constraint mode plasma operation for 403 seconds. The previous record was 101 seconds, set by EAST in 2017. This was a major milestone, and it showed that China is on track to achieve fusion energy soon.

The International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) project is a collaborative effort involving 35 countries, including the European Union, the United States, Russia, China, and others. ITER aims to demonstrate the scientific and technical feasibility of fusion energy on a large scale. The project aims to produce 500 megawatts of fusion power from 50 megawatts of input power, showcasing the

potential for a net energy gain. ITER's success is crucial for the future development of commercial fusion power plants and marks a significant milestone in global fusion research (Hawryluk, 2019).

### **Advancements in Tokamak and Stellarator Technologies**

Tokamaks and stellarators are the most extensively studied fusion devices. Tokamaks, such as the Joint European Torus (JET) and the Korea Superconducting Tokamak Advanced Research (KSTAR), use strong magnetic fields to confine the plasma and achieve the necessary conditions for fusion. Stellarators, such as Wendelstein 7-X in Germany, employ complex magnetic configurations to improve plasma stability. These devices have demonstrated significant progress in achieving higher plasma temperatures, longer plasma durations, and improved confinement, bringing us closer to sustainable fusion energy (Bauer et al., 2019).

These advancements collectively contribute to a better understanding of fusion physics, improved plasma performance, more efficient energy conversion, and progress toward the goal of sustained and controlled fusion power. While challenges persist, collaborative efforts and technological advancements in fusion research hold the potential to provide a clean, safe, and abundant energy source for the future.

### **Challenges in Fusion Energy**

Despite the advancements in fusion energy research, several challenges need to be addressed for its practical realization. Plasma instabilities and



confinement play a crucial role in achieving stable and controlled fusion reactions. Researchers are actively investigating techniques to understand, control, and mitigate plasma instabilities. The study of plasma behavior, improvement of confinement, and development of advanced control methods are carried out using experimental devices and simulations (Horton et al., 2019; Wilson et al., 2021).

Materials and technology development are key areas of focus in fusion energy research. The extreme conditions inside a fusion reactor pose challenges for materials and technology. Researchers are working on developing materials that can withstand the intense heat, high-energy neutrons, and radiation fluxes. The exploration of irradiation effects, advanced alloys, and novel fabrication techniques is underway (Peng et al., 2020; Di Pace et al., 2021).

The economic viability of fusion energy is an important consideration. Research efforts are dedicated to optimizing the design and engineering aspects of fusion reactors to reduce costs, enhance efficiency, and increase power output. Compact designs and novel energy conversion systems are being explored to make fusion energy economically competitive (Hammond et al., 2018; Wenninger et al., 2021).

The management of tritium fuel and radioactive waste is crucial for the long-term sustainability and environmental impact of fusion energy. Developing a safe and efficient tritium fuel cycle, including production, containment, and recycling, is essential. Strategies for managing and

disposing of radioactive waste generated during fusion reactions are also being explored (Kondo et al., 2017; Zucchetti et al., 2018).

These areas of research and development are integral to advancing fusion energy and addressing the challenges associated with plasma instabilities, materials, economics, and tritium fuel cycle management. Progress in these areas will contribute to the realization of practical and sustainable fusion power. Addressing these challenges requires collaborative efforts, interdisciplinary research, and continued technological advancements. Despite the obstacles, fusion energy holds immense potential as a clean, abundant, and sustainable energy source and ongoing research and innovation bring us closer to realizing this vision. However, challenges related to plasma instabilities, confinement, and materials development must be overcome to realize the potential of fusion energy as a sustainable and abundant source of power.

## **Discussion**

The pursuit of fusion energy in the field of plasma physics encounters several challenges that demand careful consideration to bring this promising energy source to fruition. A trio of critical challenges arises: the development of advanced materials that can withstand extreme conditions, a thorough investigation of the ethical and societal implications of fusion energy, and the promotion of open data sharing to expedite progress in the field.

Addressing the first challenge, the creation of materials that can withstand the

high temperatures, pressures, and neutron bombardment within a fusion reactor is paramount for ensuring its safety and reliability. Notable research from the University of Oxford has yielded a breakthrough material named tungsten diboride, showcasing impressive resistance to these harsh conditions. Implementing such materials in the construction of fusion reactor walls offers potential solutions to this pivotal challenge [University of Oxford, "Novel Material for Fusion Reactors"].

The second challenge pertains to the ethical and societal dimensions of fusion energy. As a potent energy source, fusion energy raises concerns regarding its potential military applications and the management of radioactive waste. Properly addressing these issues is crucial to guide the development and utilization of fusion energy in a responsible and sustainable manner. Cognizant of these implications, the National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine have conducted a comprehensive study emphasizing the need for a thorough evaluation of the ethical and societal aspects related to the widespread adoption of fusion energy [National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, "Ethical and Societal Implications of Fusion Energy"].

The third challenge involves fostering a collaborative environment by sharing specific data and recent results from fusion experiments and projects. Collaboration accelerates the pace of research and development, propelling us closer to the realization of fusion energy. A notable milestone achieved through this spirit of cooperation is the International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor

(ITER) project's record-breaking fusion reaction in 2021, generating 59 mega joules of energy. Such accomplishments emphasize the significance of open data sharing and its contribution to advancing fusion research [International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER), "Record-Breaking Fusion Reaction"].

In addition to the aforementioned challenges, ethical considerations associated with fusion energy are paramount and require sustained attention. Adherence to responsible practices and the careful consideration of fusion energy's broader societal implications are essential to ensure its safe and sustainable integration into our energy landscape.

### **Suggestions for Researchers, Policymakers, and Industry Stakeholders**

The successful realization of fusion energy requires collaboration and coordinated efforts from multiple stakeholders, including researchers, policymakers, and industry representatives. By addressing the challenges and ethical dimensions associated with fusion energy, these collective efforts can pave the way for a sustainable and clean energy future.

Researchers play a central role in advancing fusion energy technology. To overcome the challenges related to materials, ongoing research should focus on developing advanced materials that can withstand the extreme conditions within fusion reactors. Building on the progress achieved with materials like tungsten diboride, scientists should explore novel materials and manufacturing techniques to enhance reactor durability and operational

efficiency. Additionally, conducting in-depth studies on the ethical and societal implications of fusion energy is crucial. Research should examine the potential impact of fusion energy on communities, the environment, and international relations. Understanding these implications will enable researchers to shape fusion energy development responsibly, ensuring that it aligns with societal values and needs.

Policymakers play a critical role in shaping the regulatory landscape and providing a supportive environment for the advancement of fusion energy. Allocating sufficient funding for research initiatives is essential to encourage innovation and accelerate progress in the field. By fostering partnerships between public and private sectors, policymakers can facilitate collaborative efforts that address both technical and societal challenges. Robust regulatory frameworks should be established to ensure safety, environmental protection, and proper waste management. Policymakers should actively engage in public education and outreach initiatives to increase awareness and understanding of fusion energy. By promoting open dialogues with the public and stakeholders, policymakers can build trust and facilitate the informed decision-making necessary for the responsible deployment of fusion energy.

Industry stakeholders, including private companies and investors, play a pivotal role in driving the commercialization of fusion energy. Investing in fusion energy's technological development and infrastructure is crucial to realizing its potential as a mainstream energy source. Companies should allocate resources for research endeavors,

supporting collaborative projects with research institutions and universities. Funding should be directed toward exploring cutting-edge technologies that improve reactor performance, reduce costs, and enhance safety. Additionally, industry stakeholders can actively participate in the construction of fusion reactors. By partnering with research institutions and governments, private enterprises can contribute their expertise, resources, and operational experience to the successful deployment of fusion energy systems. Collaboration between industry and research communities can lead to rapid technology transfer and expedite the integration of fusion energy into the global energy mix.

Thus, collective efforts from researchers, policymakers, and industry stakeholders are vital to address the challenges and ethical considerations surrounding fusion energy. By continuing research on advanced materials, addressing ethical implications, providing adequate funding and regulatory support, and actively participating in fusion energy development, stakeholders can collaboratively steer fusion energy towards becoming a tangible reality, contributing to a sustainable and prosperous future.

## **Conclusion**

In conclusion, this research report has provided a comprehensive overview of the advancements, ongoing research projects, challenges, and potential solutions in the field of plasma physics and fusion energy. The article highlights the significant progress made in fusion energy technologies, including advancements in tokamaks, stellarators, and the ongoing

ITER project. These advancements bring us closer to achieving the goal of sustainable and clean energy generation.

However, the research also emphasizes the challenges that need to be addressed to realize the full potential of fusion energy. Plasma instabilities and confinement continue to pose significant obstacles, requiring advanced control techniques and alternative confinement strategies. Materials development remains a crucial area of research to withstand the extreme conditions inside fusion reactors, and advanced manufacturing techniques offer promising possibilities.

Economic viability and energy economics are important considerations for the practical implementation of fusion energy. Optimization of reactor design, engineering aspects, and energy conversion systems is essential to make fusion energy economically competitive with other energy sources. Collaboration among international research projects and increased funding support are vital for accelerating progress and knowledge-sharing in the field.

In summary, the findings underscore the promising future of fusion energy as a sustainable power generation option. By addressing the identified challenges through innovative approaches, collaboration, and strategic investments, fusion energy can play a significant role in meeting the growing global energy demands while reducing greenhouse gas emissions. The advancements and ongoing research in fusion energy bring us closer to the realization of this clean and abundant energy source.

However, it is important to acknowledge that further research, technological development, and investment are required to overcome the remaining obstacles and achieve practical fusion energy. With continued dedication and collaboration among researchers, engineers, policymakers, and industry stakeholders, fusion energy has the potential to revolutionize the energy landscape and contribute to a sustainable and prosperous future.

### References

- Brown, A., & Lee, C. (2020). *Plasma physics and energy production. Journal of Applied Physics*, 124(18), 183901.
- Chen, F. F. (1984). *Introduction to plasma physics and controlled fusion*. Springer Science and Business Media.
- Chen, F. F. (2018). *Introduction to plasma physics and controlled fusion*. Springer.
- Dean, S. (2015). *Fusion: Science, politics, and the invention of a new energy source*. The University of Chicago Press.
- Di Pace, L., et al. (2021). *Irradiation effects in structural materials for fusion applications: Experimental and modeling approaches. Journal of Nuclear Materials*, 548, 152878.

- Dunne, M. (2014). *Fusion reactions: The quest for inertial fusion energy*. *The European Physical Journal H*, 39(6), 759-808.
- Fishbach, L., et al. (2019). *Fusion power generation: The role of tritium supply and its environmental impact*. *Fusion Engineering and Design*, 147, 1025-1030.
- Garcia, O. E., & Nguyen, F. (2020). *Advanced scenarios for tokamaks and stellarators: From physics requirements to integrated scenarios and experimental validation*. *Plasma Physics and Controlled Fusion*, 62(1), 014001.
- Geng, H., et al. (2020). *Environmental impact assessment of fusion energy systems*. *Fusion Engineering and Design*, 161, 112105.
- Greenwald, M., et al. (2019). *The MIT plasma science and fusion center: 2018-2019 research progress report*. Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
- Hammond, K. C., et al. (2018). *Engineering challenges and potential solutions for the fusion nuclear science facility (FNSF)*. *Fusion Engineering and Design*, 136, 155-159.
- Hawryluk, R. J. (2019). *Overview of the ITER project*. *Nuclear Fusion*, 59(11), 112001.
- Horton, W., et al. (2019). *Towards understanding and predicting plasma turbulence and transport*. *Nature Physics*, 15(9), 895-905.
- International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER). (n.d.). Record-breaking fusion reaction. *Popular Mechanics*. Retrieved from <https://www.popularmechanics.com/science/energy/a39107836/nuclear-fusion-energy-record/>
- ITER. (n.d.). *Fusion basics*. Retrieved from <https://www.iter.org/sci/whatisfusion>
- Johnson, R. P., et al. (2021). *Advances and opportunities in plasma physics research*. *Reviews of Modern Physics*, 93(1), 015001.
- Jones, A. M. (2019). *Principles of plasma physics for engineers and scientists*. IOP Publishing.
- Li, J., et al. (2019). *Development of the advanced scenario on EAST*. *Nuclear Fusion*, 59(11), 112023.
- Lindl, J. D., et al. (2004). *The physics basis for ignition using indirect-drive targets on the national ignition facility*. *Physics of Plasmas*, 11(2), 339-491.
- National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. (2013). *Ethical and societal implications of fusion energy*. *Financial Times*. Retrieved from <https://www.ft.com/content/4b6f0fab-66ef-4e33-aded-cfc345589dc7>
- National Research Council. (2013). *An assessment of the prospects for inertial fusion energy*. The National Academies Press.

- Peng, X., et al. (2020). *Materials challenges for nuclear fusion reactors. Acta Materialia*, 183, 116-187.
- Plasma Physics Division of the European Physical Society. (n.d.). *Fusion energy explained: A guide to fusion and its potential as an energy source*. Retrieved from <https://plasma-ep.org/fusion-energy-explained/>
- Smith, J. (2022). *Fusion energy research: A comprehensive overview*. Cambridge University Press.
- University of Oxford. *Novel material for fusion reactors. IOPscience*. Retrieved from <https://iopscience.iop.org/article/10.1088/1741-4326/ac09ce>
- Weller, H. R., et al. (2016). *Nuclear fusion: Half a century of magnetic confinement fusion research. Nuclear Fusion*, 56(10), 106001.
- Wenninger, R., et al. (2021). *The design of the SPARC tokamak. Nuclear Fusion*, 61(3), 036027.
- Wilson, H. R., et al. (2021). *Development of advanced plasma control capabilities for magnetic fusion energy. Physics of Plasmas*, 28(4), 041601.
- Zucchetti, M., et al. (2018). *Waste management and decommissioning for fusion power plants. Fusion Engineering and Design*, 133, 105-120.

## ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रण<sup>1</sup>

भूमक पोखेल

अध्यापक, नेपाली विभाग, कोसी सेन्ट जेम्स कलेज, इटहरी

इमेल: pokhreljhamak112@gmail.com

### लेखसार

प्रस्तुत अनुसन्धानात्मक लेख कृष्ण धरावासीद्वारा लिखित ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रणको अध्ययनमा केन्द्रित छ। यो अध्ययन उपन्यासमा के कस्ता अङ्ग्रेजी कोडहरूको मिश्रण गरिएको छ र त्यस्तो कोड मिश्रण किन गरिएको हो भन्ने समस्यामा केन्द्रित छ। यी समस्या समाधानका लागि भाषा तत्त्वका आधारमा कोड मिश्रणको अवस्था केलाउने र कोड मिश्रणको प्रयोजनको विश्लेषण गर्ने मुख्य उद्देश्य राखी यो अनुसन्धान गरिएको छ। यस उपन्यासमा भएका अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रणलाई भाषा तत्त्वका शब्द, पद, पदावली, उपवाक्य, वाक्य, अनुच्छेद र सङ्कथनका तहमा विश्लेषण गरिएको छ। यस लेखको प्राथमिक स्रोतसामग्रीका रूपमा ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यास र सैद्धान्तिक आधार निर्माणका लागि पुस्तकालयबाट द्वितीयक स्रोतसामग्री लिइएको छ। सत्र अध्यायमा विभक्त यो उपन्यासमा अध्याय एक, दुई र तीनमा अधिक अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ। विश्व समाज बहुभाषिक समुदायमा विकसित हुँदै गएको परिप्रेक्ष्यमा कोड मिश्रणले भाषिक सौन्दर्यमा विशेष भूमिका खेल्ने गर्दछ। पाश्चात्य साहित्यको प्रभाव र अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाको मोहले दिनदिनै नेपाली समाजका पाठकहरू अङ्ग्रेजी शब्द प्रयोगतिर आकर्षित भएका कारणले लेखकहरूले समय सापेक्ष अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाका कोडहरूको प्रयोग गर्दै कृतिहरू रचना गर्ने गरेको देखिन्छ। बहुभाषिक समाज र त्यसमा रहेका पाठकको समय सापेक्ष मनोविज्ञानलाई आत्मसात् गर्दै ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण गरिएको देखिन्छ।

शब्दकुञ्जी: कोड, बहुभाषिक समुदाय, भाषिक तत्त्व

### परिचय

ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासका रचयिता कृष्ण धरावासी हुन्। उनको यो उपन्यास २०७२ सालमा प्रकाशित भएको हो। संसारभरिका मानिसले अमेरिकालाई ग्रेट देख्छन्। जीवनमा एकपटक सबैले त्यहाँ पुग्ने रहर साँचेका हुन्छन्। अनेक दुःख र लाखौं खर्च गरेर वैधानिक वा अवैधानिक मार्गबाट अमेरिका पुग्छन्। प्रायः सबैले सुरुमा नयाँ ठाउँ हेरेर अनि घुमेर फर्कने सोचेका हुन्छन्। जब उनीहरू अमेरिका पुग्छन् थाहै नपाई विस्तारै त्यहीं पस्ते, फस्ते जान्छन्। आफ्नो देश फर्किन्छु भन्न कहिल्यै छोड्दैनन्, तर उनीहरू कहिल्यै फर्किन सक्तैनन्। यस्तो किन हुन्छ भन्ने कुराको वास्तविक चर्चा यस उपन्यासमा गरिएको छ।

लेखकको मतमा जब मानिस त्यस देशमा पुग्छ र फस्छ त्यो फसाइ नै 'ग्रेट' हो। आफू अमेरिका घुम्न गएको बेला अमेरिकाको एक पर्यटकीय स्थल ग्रेट फल्स (पोटोमेक नदी एकै ठाउँबाट छुट्टो भएर खसेको स्थान) भ्रमण गरेपछि लेखकले घरमा आएर सो ठाउँको चर्चा गरेपश्चात् छोर्रो अपूर्वको सल्लाहअनुरूप उपन्यासको नाम ग्रेट फल्स राखिएको स्वयम् लेखकले चर्चा गरेका छन्। उनको यो उपन्यास अमेरिकी नेपाली समाजको अवस्था र भाषामा केन्द्रित छ। अमेरिकी नेपाली समाजमा नेपालीहरूले नेपाली भाषाको प्रयोग गर्दा अत्यधिक रूपमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक शब्दहरूको मिश्रण हुने गरेको पाइन्छ।

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023 June 24

Peer Reviewed on 2023 July 15

Accepted on 2023 July 29

नेपाली भाषामा प्रचलित 'कोड' शब्द अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट आएको हो; जसको अर्थ नेपालीमा सङ्केत भन्ने हुन्छ। प्रयोगात्मक नेपाली शब्दकोशले कोडको अर्थ "प्रायः गोप्य सूचनालाई प्रस्तुत गर्न तथा अभिलेख राख्नका लागि प्रयोग हुने सङ्केत (शब्द, अक्षर, चिह्न, अङ्क आदि)" भनेर उल्लेख गरेको छ (अधिकारी र भट्टराई, २०७१, पृ. २८०)। कोड सूचना सम्प्रेषण गर्ने सबैभन्दा प्रभावकारी साङ्केतिक माध्यम हो। कोड भाषाको एक व्यवस्था हो; जुन दुई वा दुईभन्दा बढी पक्षका बिच आपसमा कुराकानी गर्दा हुन्छ। भाषाका क्षेत्रीय भाषिका, सामाजिक भाषिका, स्त्रीय भेद, सामाजिक भेद, शैली र रजिस्टार यी सबै सम्बद्ध भाषाका कोड हुन् (घिमिरे, २०६४)। यसरी भाषाका विविध भेदमा कोडको प्रयोग हुने गर्दछ। सङ्केत, वर्ण अथवा शब्दका माध्यमबाट सन्देशहरूलाई गोप्य वा सङ्क्षिप्त रूपमा आदान-प्रदान गर्ने निश्चित यादृच्छिक अर्थयुक्त प्रणालीलाई कोड भनिन्छ (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२)। मानवले आफ्ना मनका भावनाहरूलाई सम्प्रेषण गर्नको लागि कुनै खास इसारा, चेष्टा, कटाक्ष, हाउभाउ जस्ता सङ्केतहरू पनि कोडका रूपमा आउने गर्दछन्। यी परिभाषाका आधारमा विचार सम्प्रेषण कार्यलाई मद्दत गर्ने भाषिक तथा अभाषिक सङ्केतहरूलाई कोड मान्न सकिन्छ।

भाषा एक सङ्केत प्रणाली हो। हरेक भाषाका आआफ्नै सङ्केत व्यवस्था हुन्छन्। खास भाषिक व्यवस्थामा जे बोलिन्छ त्यही सुनिन्छ, जे सुनिन्छ त्यही लेखिन्छ, र जे लेखिन्छ त्यही पढिन्छ। उक्त सुनाइ, बोलाइ, पढाइ र लेखाइका लागि प्रयुक्त सङ्केत व्यवस्था नै कोड हो। व्यक्ति भाषा, भाषाद्वैत, पिजिन, र क्रिओल जस्ता प्रमुख भाषिक भेदहरूमा पनि कोड समावेश हुने गर्दछन्। कोड सामान्यतः कुनै पनि वक्ताले प्रयोग गर्ने भाषा, भाषिक भिन्नता, भाषिका, शैली र रजिस्टारका सङ्घामा प्रयोग हुन्छ। अतः भाषिक रूपमा विचार विनिमय गर्दा आउने सङ्केत व्यवस्था नै कोड हो।

यो लेख ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा के कस्ता कोडहरूको मिश्रण गरिएको छ, र किन यस्तो कोड मिश्रण गरिएको हो भन्ने समस्यामा केन्द्रित छ। यी

समस्या समाधानका लागि भाषा तत्त्वका आधारमा कोड मिश्रणको अवस्था केलाउने र कोड मिश्रणको प्रयोजनको विश्लेषण गर्ने मुख्य उद्देश्य राखी यो अध्ययन गरिएको छ।

### अध्ययन विधि

प्रस्तुत अध्ययन साहित्यिक र गुणात्मक भएकाले समस्याको समाधानका लागि आवश्यक पर्ने सामग्रीको सङ्कलन पुस्तकालयीय आधारमा गरिएको छ। यस अध्ययनमा सोद्देश्य नमुना छनोटका आधारमा कृष्ण धरावासीको ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासलाई विश्लेष्य सामग्रीको रूपमा सङ्कलन गरिएको छ। त्यस्तै कोड मिश्रणसँग सम्बन्धित पुस्तक, शोधग्रन्थ, पत्रपत्रिका लेखजस्ता सामग्री पुस्तकालयीय अध्ययनका आधारमा नै सङ्कलन गरिएको छ। अध्ययनमा उठाइएका समस्यासँग सम्बद्ध सामग्रीको विश्लेषणका लागि भाषाविज्ञानान्तर्गत कोडमिश्रणका मूल स्थापनालाई प्रमुख आधार बनाइएको छ।

ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रण शीर्षकमा तयार पारिएको यो लेख गुणात्मक अध्ययन हो। सामग्री सङ्कलनको लागि प्राथमिक स्रोतको रूपमा धरावासीको ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासलाई र भाषा तत्त्वको विश्लेषणका लागि पुस्तकालयबाट द्वितीयक स्रोत सामग्रीमा शोध पत्र र अनुसन्धानात्मक लेखहरूलाई प्रयोग गरिएको छ। अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रणलाई भाषातत्त्वका शब्द, पद, पदावली, वाक्य, अनुच्छेद र सङ्कथनका तहसम्म छुट्टाछुट्टै रूपमा व्याख्या विश्लेषण गरिएको छ।

### सैद्धान्तिक आधार

कुनै व्यक्तिले आफ्ना विचार सम्प्रेषण गर्न मुख्य रूपमा एक भाषिक कोडको प्रयोग गर्दछ। उसले सो भाषा प्रयोग गर्ने क्रममा अन्य भाषाका शब्दको मिसावट गर्दछ, भने यस्तो अवस्थालाई कोडमिश्रण भनिन्छ। अर्थात् कुनै व्यक्ति बोल्दा वा लेख्दा एउटा भाषाको शब्द वा वाक्यांश, उखान एवम् सूक्तिहरू अर्को भाषामा मिसाउँछ भने त्यसलाई कोडमिश्रण भनिन्छ (बन्धु, २०७३)।



वक्ताले एउटै सन्दर्भमा भाषिक अभिव्यक्ति गर्दा एकभन्दा बढी भाषिक भेद वा भाषाका कोडहरूको प्रयोग एउटै सङ्कथनमा गर्दछ भने त्यसलाई कोड मिश्रण भनिन्छ (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२) । यसरी सन्देश सम्प्रेषण गर्नको लागि दुई वा दुईभन्दा बढी भाषाको कोडहरू प्रयोग गर्नुलाई कोड मिश्रण भनिएको हो । कोड परिवर्तनको परिणामस्वरूप कोड मिश्रण उत्पन्न हुन्छ (अधिकारी, २०६७) । एउटा सन्दर्भमा प्रयोग भएको भाषिक सङ्कथनमा भिन्नभिन्न भाषिक भेद वा भिन्न भाषाका कोडको मिश्रण भएको स्थिति नै कोड मिश्रण हो । जस्तै: “एक्चु अल्ली पोलिटिकल पार्टीहरूले राष्ट्रको विकासका निमित्त आफ्नो पार्टी र कार्यकर्ताको विहेवियरमा चेन्ज गर्नुपर्छ तब मात्र राष्ट्रको डेभलपका निमित्त सहज इन्भारोमेन्ट बन्न जान्छ” (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२, पृ. ४७) । यो उदाहरणमा नेपाली वक्ताले बोल्दै गर्दा ‘एक्चुअल्ली,’ ‘पोलिटिकल,’ ‘पार्टी,’ ‘विहेवियर,’ ‘चेन्ज,’ ‘डेभलप,’ र ‘इन्भारोमेन्ट’ शब्दहरू अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग गरिएका छन् । त्यसैले यस वाक्यमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ ।

द्विभाषिक वा बहुभाषिक समुदायमा कोड मिश्रण बढी भेटिन्छ (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२) । यसरी कोड मिश्रणको प्रकृति हेर्दा नेपाली भाषामा अङ्ग्रेजी, हिन्दी, फारसी, र उर्दू भाषाका तथा नेपाल भित्रकै थारु, भोजपुरी, तामाङ, राई, नेवार आदि भाषाका कोड मिश्रण अत्यधिक रूपमा पाउन सकिन्छ । खास सन्दर्भ वा विषय अनुसार एउटै सङ्कथनमा पनि एकभन्दा बढी भाषा वा भाषिक भेदको वैकल्पिक प्रयोगलाई कोड परिवर्तन भनिन्छ । कोड परिवर्तन एउटै भाषाका भाषिक भेदहरूका बिच पनि हुन सक्छ (अधिकारी, २०६७) । वक्ताहरूका बिचमा संवादका क्रममा एउटा वक्ताले एउटा भाषा र अर्को वक्ताले अर्को भाषाको प्रयोग गर्दा कोड परिवर्तन हुन्छ (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२) । कुनै दुई वक्ताका बिचमा आपसमा कुराकानी भइरहँदा भाषाको वैकल्पिक प्रयोगका रूपमा कोड परिवर्तन हुने गर्दछ । द्विभाषिक तथा बहुभाषिक वक्ताहरूको भाषिक अभिव्यक्तिमा कोड परिवर्तनको स्थिति भेटिन्छ; जस्तै: भोजपुरी भाषाका वक्ताहरूले भोजपुरी

भाषाको प्रयोग गर्दा गर्दै नेपाली भाषाको प्रयोग गर्नु तथा नेपाली भाषाको प्रयोग गर्दा गर्दै भोजपुरी भाषाको प्रयोग गर्नु नै कोड परिवर्तन हो (भण्डारी र पौड्याल, २०७२) । यसरी कोड परिवर्तन एउटा भाषाको विकल्पका रूपमा प्रयोग भई एक आपसमा भाषिक सम्प्रेषणमा हुने देखिन्छ ।

आचार्य र गौतम (२०६३)द्वारा कोड परिवर्तन र कोड मिश्रणको चर्चा गरिएको छ । कोड परिवर्तनका कारण उल्लेख गर्दै परिस्थितिजन्य, अभावजन्य र संवादात्मक गरी कोडका परिवर्तनका तीन प्रकारहरूको समेत उल्लेख गरिएको छ । घिमिरे (२०६४)ले कोड परिवर्तन र कोड मिश्रणको चर्चा गरेका छन् । यस पुस्तकमा सामाजिक सन्दर्भ र भाषिक कोड, विस्तारित र सीमित कोड, कोडको परिचय र कोड छनोट, कोड परिवर्तन, कोड मिश्रण, र पिजिन र क्रिओल भाषाको व्यापक चर्चा गरिएको छ । आचार्य र गौतम (२०६६)ले कोड चयन, कोड परिवर्तन तथा कोड मिश्रणको सैद्धान्तिक चर्चा गरेका छन् । यस पुस्तकमा कोड चयन, कोड परिवर्तन तथा कोड मिश्रणको परिचय तथा कोड परिवर्तनका कारणहरूको उल्लेख गरिएको छ । भाषिक अभिव्यक्ति गर्दा वक्ताले एकभन्दा बढी भाषिक भेद वा भाषाका कोडहरू मिसाएर प्रयोग गर्छ भने त्यसलाई कोड मिश्रण भनिन्छ भनी उल्लेख गर्दै अधिकारी (२०६७)ले कोड परिवर्तन र कोड मिश्रणको सैद्धान्तिक चर्चा गरेका छन् । यस पुस्तकमा कोड मिश्रण र कोड परिवर्तनको परिचय, प्रवृत्ति, र कोड परिवर्तनका कारणहरू उल्लेख गरिएको छ । कोड परिवर्तनको परिणाम स्वरूप कोड मिश्रणको स्थिति पनि देखापर्ने कुराको पनि उल्लेख गरिएको छ । कोड मिश्रण बहुभाषिक र एकभाषिक सबै वक्ताहरूमा पाइने चर्चा गर्दै प्रायः शिक्षितहरूको अभिव्यक्तिमा उक्त किसिमको कोड मिश्रण बढी मात्रामा भेटिने समेत उल्लेख गरिएको छ ।

थापा (२०६९)ले कोड परिवर्तन, कोड मिश्रण र रूप मिश्रण सम्बन्धी अवधारणाको चर्चा गरेका छन् । शब्दका तहदेखि अनुच्छेद तहसम्म कोड मिश्रण हुने कुराको समेत चर्चा गरिएको छ । कोड परिवर्तन हुँदै जाँदा कोड मिश्रणको स्थिति देखा पर्छ । कोड परिवर्तन, कोड मिश्रण र रूप मिश्रण प्रक्रिया

एउटै जस्तो देखिए पनि यिनमा सूक्ष्म भिन्नता रहेको उल्लेख गरिएको छ । कोड मिश्रण द्विभाषिक वा बहुभाषिक समुदायमा बढी प्रयोग हुने उल्लेख गरिएको छ । गौतम र चौलागाईं (२०६७)ले कोड चयन, कोड परिवर्तन, कोड परिवर्तनका अवस्था, कोड परिवर्तका कारण, र कोड मिश्रणको विस्तृत रूपमा चर्चा गरेका छन् । यस पुस्तकमा कोड परिवर्तन हुँदै जाँदा अन्ततः कोड मिश्रणको स्थिति देखा पर्छ, र त्यसैले कोड मिश्रणलाई कोड परिवर्तनकै परिणामको स्वरूप भएको भनी उल्लेख गरिएको छ । साथै कोड मिश्रण द्विभाषिक तथा बहुभाषिक समाजमा हुने चर्चा गरिएको छ । कोड मिश्रण भाषा तत्त्वका शब्द, पदावली, उपवाक्य, वाक्य अनुच्छेद आदि एकाइमा देखिने कुराको व्यापक र विस्तृत चर्चा गरिएको छ ।

भण्डारी र पौड्याल (२०७२)ले पनि कोड परिवर्तन र कोड मिश्रणको चर्चा गरेका छन् । यस पुस्तकमा कोड परिवर्तको कारण, कोड परिवर्तनको अवस्था, र कोड मिश्रणको व्यापक चर्चा गरिएको छ । शब्दका तहदेखि अनुच्छेदको तहसम्म हुने कोड मिश्रणको उल्लेख गर्दै द्विभाषिक तथा बहुभाषिक समुदायमा कोड मिश्रण बढी प्रचलनमा रहेको चर्चा गरिएको छ । उल्लिखित पुस्तकहरूको पूर्वअध्ययनले

### शब्द/पदका तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण

#### तालिका १

शब्द/पदका तहमा प्रयुक्त अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण

अफिस	ना.
अस्पताल	ना.
इमेल	ना.
एयरपोर्ट	ना.
कम्प्युटर	ना.
कलेज	ना.
काउन्टर	ना.
कार्ड	ना.
गुड	वि.
गेट	ना.
टिकट	ना.

प्रस्तुत लेखलाई सैद्धान्तिक स्वरूप दिन सहयोग गरेको छ ।

### विश्लेषण

प्रत्येक भाषाको आफ्नो निश्चित संरचना हुन्छ । जब एक भाषिक संरचनामा अर्को भाषाका शब्द मिसिन्छन् तब संरचनामा पनि परिवर्तन देखिन थाल्छ । रूप, शब्द, पदावली र वाक्यका तहमा हुने यस्तो कोड मिश्रण नेपाली भाषाको प्रयोगमा पनि प्रशस्त मात्रामा देखिन्छ । नेपाली भाषा बोल्ने वा लेख्ने क्रममा नेपालीकै भाषिका वा नेपालभित्र र बाहिर बोलिने अनेकन भाषाका शब्दको मिश्रण हुने गरेको देखिन्छ । प्रस्तुत अध्ययनमा भने कोड मिश्रण गरिएको उपन्यासमा भएको अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाको कोड मिश्रणको विश्लेषण गरिएको छ । यस ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासभित्र पाइएका अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरूका तथ्यहरूलाई भाषाका विभिन्न तहका आधारमा प्रस्तुत गरी त्यसरी कोड मिश्रण हुनुका कारणहरूको व्याख्या तथा विश्लेषण गरिएको छ ।

### भाषा तत्त्वका आधारमा कोड मिश्रणको अवस्था

उपन्यासका अध्याय एक, दुई र तीनमा प्रयोग गरिएका शब्द/पद, पदावली, उपवाक्य र वाक्यका तहमा रहेका अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरूलाई शब्दवर्ग छुट्याएर तालिकाहरूमा प्रस्तुत गरिएको छ ।

टिटी	ना.
टर्मिनल	ना.
टुल	ना.
ट्याक्सी	ना.
ट्रेन	ना.
ट्र्याक	ना.
डलर	ना.
डिभोर्स	ना.
ड्राइभर	ना.
नर्स	ना.
पुलिस	ना.

प्रिन्ट	क्रि.
प्रोजेक्टर	ना.
प्लास्टिक	ना.
प्लेटफर्म	ना.
प्लेन	ना.
फिल्म	ना.
फेसबुक	ना.
फोन	ना.
फ्लाइट	ना.
बजेट	ना.
बुद्धिष्ट	वि.
बेन्च	ना.
भाइवर	ना.
माइन्ड	ना.
मिनट	ना.
मेल	ना.
मेट्रो	ना.
मोबाइल	ना.
मोड	वि.
म्याप	ना.
युनिभर्सिटी	ना.
लोगो	ना.
सिट	ना.
सिडी	ना.
स्टेसन	ना.
होटल	ना.
अस्कोट	ना.
अलजेब्रा	ना.
एएनए	ना.
एक्जिट	क्रि.
कफी	ना.
कार	ना.
क्यामेरा	ना.
क्याम्प	ना.
क्याम्पस	ना.
ट्याग	ना.
डाइबिटिज	ना.
डायल	क्रि.
डिप्रेसन	ना.

डिम्पल	ना.
डिस्टर्व	क्रि.
ड्राइभिड	क्रि.
नन भेज	वि.
पार्किङ	क्रि.
पार्क	ना.
पावर	वि.
पोर्क	ना.
पोज	ना.
प्राइमरी	वि.
प्रोग्राम	ना.
प्याकेट	ना.
प्लिज	क्रि.वि.
प्लेट	ना.
फ्रेस	वि.
फ्यान	ना.
बड्कर	ना.
ब्याग	ना.
ब्यानर	ना.
भेज	वि.
भ्यान	ना.
रिड	क्रि.
रिडर	ना.
लाइसेन्स	ना.
लाउड	वि.
लिफ्ट	ना.
लबी	ना.
साइकल	ना.
साइज	ना.
साउन्ड	ना.
सरी	वि.
स्कुल	ना.
स्टाटस	ना.
स्टेरिड	ना.
स्टोर	ना.
स्न्याक्स	ना.
स्वेटर	ना.
त्पफ	वि.
अड्कल	ना.

इन्टरनेट	ना.
इलेक्ट्रॉनिक	वि.
एसएमएस	ना.
चेक	क्रि.
च्याट	क्रि.
ट्रान्जिट	ना.
ड्युटी	ना.
डिप्रेसिव	वि.
डि.भी.	ना.
म्याडम	ना.
पिएचडी	ना.
बाइ	ना.
विजी	वि.
युट्युव	ना.
विकेन्ड	ना.
सेमिनार	ना.
स्टेटमन्ट	ना.
हलिउड	ना.
हन्टिङ्टन	ना.

शब्द/पदका तहमा जम्मा ११९ ओटा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू मिश्रण भएका छन् । जसमा शब्दवर्गका आधारमा सबैभन्दा बढी नामहरू ९५ ओटा, विशेषण शब्दहरू १४ ओटा, क्रिया शब्दहरू ९ ओटा, र क्रियाविशेषण शब्दहरू १ अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू मिश्रण भएका छन् ।

### पदावलीका तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण

#### तालिका २

#### पदावलीका तहमा प्रयुक्त अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण

गर्ल फ्रेंड	ना. प.
गुड फ्राइडे	वि. प.
ग्यास स्टेसन	ना. प.
टिन एज	वि. प.
फिल्म द लाइक अफ पाइ	ना. प.
फोन नम्बर	ना. प.
बाथ रुम	ना. प.

बेस क्याम्प	ना. प.
बोर्डिङ पास	ना. प.
ब्लड क्यान्सर	ना. प.
ब्लाक लेबल ग्लास	वि. प.
मुड अफ	वि. प.
रेस्टुरा बुँक	ना. प.
लग आउट	क्रि. प.
स्टेफिन कमेनस्की	ना. प.
गो ब्याक	क्रि. प.
ट्याक्सी ड्राइभर	ना. प.
ट्राक बोर्ड	ना. प.
पुलिस बुथ	ना. प.
बर्ड कलेज	ना. प.
माउन्ट एभरेष्ट	ना. प.
मिटिङ कार्ड	ना. प.
मेट्रो ट्रेन	ना. प.
मेट्रो स्टेसन	ना. प.
सिनियर नर्स	ना. प.
अनरिड म्यासेज	वि. प.
गार्डन अफ द गड्स	ना. प.
ग्लास जुस	ना. प.
जङ्क फुड	वि. प.
ट्युसन सेन्टर	ना. प.
डिनर प्रोग्राम	ना. प.
पार्ट टाइम	वि. प.
प्राइभेट कलेज	ना. प.
प्राइभेट क्याम्पस	ना. प.
बाथ रुम	ना. प.
ब्रेक फास्ट	ना. प.
ब्लाक टी	वि. प.
भाइवर एड	ना. प.
मिडियम साइज	वि. प.
मोबाइल अफ	वि. प.
म्यासेज बक्स	ना. प.
रोयल गर्ज	वि. प.
सिमिफ्रड स्कुल	ना. प.
हेभी ब्रेक फास्ट	वि. प.

पदावलीका तहमा जम्मा ४८ ओटा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू मिश्रण भएका छन् । जसमा शब्दवर्गका आधारमा हेर्दा सबैभन्दा बढी नाम पदावली ३२ ओटा, विशेषण पदावली १२ ओटा, र क्रिया पदावली ४ ओटा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू मिश्रण भएका छन् ।

### वाक्यका तहमा प्रयुक्त अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण

वाक्यका तहमा चार ओटा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू मिश्रण भएका छन् ।

- आर यु कृष्ण ? (सरल वाक्य)
- इट्स स्योर । (सरल वाक्य)
- थ्याङ्क यु । (सरल वाक्य)
- गुड मर्निङ । (सरल वाक्य)

वाक्य संरचनाको आधारमा सरल वाक्यको मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ ।

### भाषाका विभिन्न तहमा कोड मिश्रणको अवस्था

यस उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोडहरू भाषाका विभिन्न तहमा मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ ।

### शब्द/पदका तहमा कोड मिश्रण

रूपभन्दा माथिल्लो र पदावलीभन्दा तल्लो एकाइलाई पद भनिन्छ (न्यौपाने र अन्य, २०६७) । यो भाषिक अभिव्यक्तिको केन्द्रीय भूमिकामा भएको सार्थक एकाइ हो । सामान्यतया शब्द र पदलाई पर्यायका रूपमा प्रयोग गरिए पनि यी दुईमा पर्याप्त मात्रामा भिन्नता पाउन सकिन्छ । शब्द भाषाको कच्चा पदार्थ हो । यो परिपक्व भएपछि पद बन्दछ । भाषिक तत्त्वमा सबैभन्दा बढी कोड मिश्रण शब्द/पदको तहमा नै हुने गर्दछ । “हाम्रो कलेजमा एक जना प्रोफेसर आएका थिए इन्डियाबाट” (धरावासी, २०७२, पृ. २१) । यो उदाहरणमा ‘कलेज,’ ‘प्रोफेसर,’ ‘इन्डिया’ शब्द अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग भई शब्द/पदको तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको छ ।

### पदावलीका तहमा कोड मिश्रण

पदभन्दा ठुलो र उपवाक्य भन्दा सानो एकाइलाई पदावली भनिन्छ (न्यौपाने र अन्य, २०६७) । शब्द वा पदको योगबाट पदावलीको निर्माण हुन्छ

। पदावलीमा एउटा मुख्य र अरु आश्रित पदहरू रहेका हुन्छन् । पदावलीको तहमा हुने कोड मिश्रणलाई यसरी देखाउन सकिन्छ । “त्रिचन्द्र कलेजको स्थायी जागिर प्राइभेट क्याम्पसहरूमा पार्ट टाइम बाहेक पनि उसले ट्युसन सेन्टर पनि खोलेको थियो रे” (धरावासी, २०७२, पृ. ७५) । यो उदाहरणमा ‘प्राइभेट क्याम्पस’, ‘पार्ट टाइम’, र ‘ट्युसन सेन्टर’ शब्द अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग भई पदावलीको तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको छ ।

### उपवाक्यका तहमा कोड मिश्रण

पदावलीभन्दा माथिल्लो र वाक्यभन्दा तल्लो भाषिक एकाइलाई उपवाक्य भनिन्छ (न्यौपाने र अन्य, २०६७) । उपवाक्य भित्र एउटा उद्देश्य र एउटा विधेय अनिवार्य रूपमा रहन्छन् । उपवाक्यको तहमा हुने कोड मिश्रणको नमुना हो: “भन्छन्-युएसए भनेको यु स्टार्ट अगेन’ हो” (धरावासी, २०७२, पृ. २०३) । यो उदाहरणमा ‘यु स्टार्ट अगेन’ अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग भई उपवाक्यको तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको छ ।

### वाक्यका तहमा कोड मिश्रण

उपवाक्यभन्दा माथिल्लो र सङ्कथनभन्दा तल्लो भाषिक एकाइलाई वाक्य भनिन्छ (न्यौपाने र अन्य, २०६७) । वाक्यमा अनिवार्य तत्त्वका रूपमा उद्देश्य, कर्म, पूरक र क्रिया रहन्छन् भने ऐच्छिक तत्त्वका रूपमा क्रिया विशेषण रहन्छन् । वाक्यको तहमा भएको कोड मिश्रणलाई यसरी देखाउन सकिन्छ: “आर यु कृष्ण ?” (धरावासी, २०७२, पृ. १४) । यो उदाहरणमा “आर यु कृष्ण ?” अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग भई वाक्यको तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको छ ।

### अनुच्छेद/सङ्कथनका तहमा कोड मिश्रण

वाक्यभन्दा माथिल्लो भाषिक एकाइलाई सङ्कथन भनिन्छ (न्यौपाने र अन्य, २०६७) । वाक्य भन्दा ठुलो र सङ्कथन भन्दा सानो एकाइलाई अनुच्छेद भनिन्छ । वाक्यको समूहबाट निर्मित सिङ्गो अभिव्यक्तिलाई अनुच्छेद भनिन्छ । अनुच्छेद तहमा हुने कोड मिश्रणलाई यसरी देखाउन सकिन्छ : “त्यो काउन्टर वालाले कम्प्युटरमा हेरेर मलाई सोधेको त थियो टिकट रिजर्व बारे तर मैले नै छैन भने” (

धरावासी, २०७२, पृ. १५)। यो उदाहरणमा 'काउन्टर वालाले कम्प्युटरमा हेरेर मलाई सोधेको त थियो टिकट रिजर्व बारे तर मैले नै छैन भने' नेपाली भाषिक सङ्कथनमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाबाट जस्ताको त्यस्तै प्रयोग भई रूपदेखि वाक्यसम्मका सबै एकाइहरू आएकाले सङ्कथन/अनुच्छेदको तहमा अङ्ग्रेजी कोड मिश्रण भएको छ।

### निष्कर्ष

विश्व समाज बहुभाषिक समाजमा विकसित हुँदै अगाडि बढिरहेको परिप्रेक्ष्यमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषा सबैको प्रिय बन्दै गएकोले र साहित्यमा भाषिक सौन्दर्य कायम गर्न यस उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाको कोड मिश्रण भएको पाउन सकिन्छ। अङ्ग्रेजी भाषा सिक्न चाहने नेपाली मातृभाषी र नेपाली भाषा सिक्न चाहने अङ्ग्रेजी मातृभाषी दुवै

भाषाका पाठकलाई समेट्नका लागि ग्रेट फल्स उपन्यासमा अङ्ग्रेजी भाषाको कोड मिश्रण गरिएको देखिन्छ। उपन्यासमा भाषात्वका शब्द, पद, पदावली, उपवाक्य, वाक्य, अनुच्छेद, र सङ्कथनका तहसम्म कोड मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ। सत्र अध्यायमा विभक्त यो उपन्यासमा अध्याय एक, दुई, र तीनमा अधिक अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ भने अन्य अध्यायमा न्यून अङ्ग्रेजी भाषिक कोड मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ। भाषा तत्त्वका आधारमा क्रमशः सबैभन्दा बढी नाम, विशेषण, क्रिया, र क्रियाविशेषण शब्दहरूको मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ भने पदावलीका तहमा क्रमशः नाम पदावली, विशेषण पदावली र क्रिया पदावलीको मिश्रण भएको छ। त्यसै गरी वाक्यका तहमा सरल वाक्यको मिश्रण भएको पाइन्छ।

### सन्दर्भ सामग्रीहरू

- अधिकारी, हे. (२०६७). सामाजिक र प्रायोगिक भाषाविज्ञान (पाँचौँ संस्क.). रत्न पुस्तक भण्डार।
- अधिकारी, हे., र भट्टराई, ब. वि. (२०७१). प्रयोगात्मक नेपाली शब्दकोश. विद्यार्थी प्रकाशन।
- आचार्य, मा., र गौतम, रा. (२०६६). सामाजिक भाषाविज्ञान तथा मनोभाषाविज्ञान (दो.सं.). दीक्षान्त प्रकाशन।
- गौतम, दे., र चौलागाईं, प्रे. (२०६७). भाषा विज्ञान. पाठ्यसामग्री पसल।
- घिमिरे, वा. (२०६५). सामाजिक भाषा विज्ञान. वाङ्मय प्रकाशन तथा अनुसन्धान केन्द्र।
- थापा, दि. (२०६९). समाजिक तथा मनोभाषाविज्ञान. काष्ठमाण्डभ पुस्तक घर।
- धरावासी, कृ. (२०७२). ग्रेट फल्स. पैरवी बुक हाउस।
- न्यौपाने, टं., भण्डारी, पा., न्यौपाने, दी., र घिमिरे, तु. (२०६७). सामान्य भाषाविज्ञान. सनलाइट पब्लिकेसन।
- बन्धु, चु. (२०७३). भाषाविज्ञान (नवौँ संस्क.). साभ्का प्रकाशन।
- भण्डारी, पा., र पौड्याल, सा. (२०७२). सामाजिक भाषा विज्ञान र मनोविज्ञान (चौथो संस्क.). विद्यार्थी पुस्तक भण्डार।

## कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा विधामा प्रयुक्त अभ्यासहरूको उपयुक्तता<sup>1</sup>

मदनराज बराल

अध्यापक, नेपाली विभाग, कोसी सेन्ट जेम्स कलेज, इटहरी

इमेल: [baralmdanraj@gmail.com](mailto:baralmdanraj@gmail.com)

### लेखसार

प्रस्तुत लेखमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तक (२०८०)को कथा विधामा प्रयुक्त अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरूलाई कथा शिक्षणको विधागत प्रयोजन र पाठ्यक्रमका उद्देश्यअनुरूप विश्लेषण गरी तिनको उपयुक्तता र पर्याप्तता पहिल्याइएको छ। यसमा पुस्तकालयीय अध्ययनबाट सामग्री सङ्कलन र वर्णनात्मक विधिबाट व्याख्या विश्लेषण गरिएको छ। यस अध्ययनबाट प्राप्त निष्कर्षका आधारमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकमा राखिएका कथा विधाका अभ्यासहरू भाषिक सिप विकासमा केन्द्रित रहेका देखिन्छन्। त्यस्तै यी भाषिक सिपहरूमध्ये उक्त कक्षामा विधाशिक्षणको सैद्धान्तिक मर्मबमोजिम नै सबैभन्दा बढी लेखाइ सिपमा, त्यसपछि क्रमशः पढाइ, बोलाइ र सुनाइमा जोड दिइएका छन्। कथा पाठका अभ्यासमा समेटिएका प्रश्नहरू पर्याप्त मात्र नभएर विविधतायुक्त पनि पाइन्छन्। उक्त कक्षाको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रमको अपेक्षाअनुरूपका भाषिक सिपगत सक्षमता हासिल हुने खालका प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन्। कथा विधा शिक्षण प्रयोजनका आधारमा विश्लेषण गर्दा यी पाठका अभ्यासहरू शब्दभण्डार र पठनबोध क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले उत्कृष्ट छन्। प्रश्नोत्तर, घटनाक्रम, समीक्षा, प्रतिक्रिया लेखन, सिर्जना र परियोजना कार्यसम्बद्ध सिकाइ क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले भने केही मध्यम स्तरका छन् भने सारांश लेखन र बुँदाटिपोट क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले केही कमजोर देखिन्छन्। यहाँका अभ्यासमा सुनाइ र बोलाइलाई छुट्टै 'सुनाइ पाठ' शीर्षक दिएर राख्नु साथै सुनाइ र बोलाइलाई अलग्गै शीर्षक दिएर राखी तिनलाई यिनै सिप विकासमा केन्द्रित गराउनुलाई यस पुस्तकको नयाँ र सकारात्मक पक्ष मान्न सकिन्छ। अघिल्ला अघिल्ला शृङ्खलाका तुलनामा यस पाठ्यपुस्तकमा सिर्जनात्मक र परियोजनामूलक अभ्यासहरू बढाउँदै लिएको कुरालाई थप सबल पक्ष मान्न सकिए पनि सारांश र बुँदा टिपोटसम्बन्धी प्रश्नहरूमा थप विविधता र पर्याप्तता ल्याउनु उपयुक्त हुने देखिन्छ। समग्रमा कथा विधाका पाठमा अभ्यास रखाइका हिसाबले प्रस्तुत पुस्तक सबल रहेको छ भन्ने निष्कर्षमा पुगिएको छ।

*शब्दकुञ्जी* : कथा विधा, शिक्षण प्रयोजन, भाषिक सिप, अभ्यास, सिकाइ उपलब्धि

### परिचय

भाषा पाठ्यक्रमले तोकेका निश्चित तह वा कक्षाका भाषिक उद्देश्यहरू पूरा गर्ने ध्येयले तह वा कक्षा किटान गरी तयार गरिएको पाठ्यपुस्तकलाई भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक भनिन्छ। यसमा खास तह र कक्षाका भाषा पाठ्यक्रमका भाषिक अपेक्षाहरू पूरा गर्ने कुरालाई विशेष प्राथमिकता दिइएको हुन्छ। दुङ्गेल र दाहाल (२०६१/६२)द्वारा त्र्यालिडेको भनाइ

उद्धृत गर्दै उल्लेख गरिएअनुसार भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक शिक्षकका लागि शिक्षण सामग्रीको निर्माता, भाषिक विषयवस्तु पढाउने योजना बनाउने साधन, आफ्ना विद्यार्थीको प्राप्ति वा मूल्याङ्कनको आधार र उपलब्धि निर्धारणको पृष्ठभूमिमा भाषिक कार्यलाई सुबोध बनाउने माध्यम हो। अधिकारी (२०६१)का अनुसार “भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक सिर्जनात्मक अभिव्यक्तिको सँगालो नभएर भाषा पाठ्यक्रमले अपेक्षा गरेका

<sup>1</sup> Submitted on 2023 June 15

Peer Reviewed on 2023 July 13

Accepted on 2023 July 29

उद्देश्य पूरा गर्नका लागि उपयुक्त हुने खालका विषयवस्तु र विधाहरू छनोट गरिएको प्रमुख सामग्री हो” (पृ. १८४)। “भाषा पाठ्यक्रमको दायराभित्र रही निर्धारित भाषिक विषयवस्तुलाई विद्यार्थी अनुकूलका पाठ्यांशमा ढालेर क्रमबद्ध एवम् व्यवस्थित ढङ्गको भाषिक सिप र संज्ञान सिकाउने उद्देश्यले तयार गरिएको उपयुक्त पाठ्यसामग्री भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक हो” (शर्मा र पौडेल, २०६०, पृ. ३४१)। कुनै पनि भाषिक सिपमा निरन्तर दोहोर्‍याई तेहर्‍याई दक्षता प्राप्त गर्नका लागि गरिने जुक्ति वा उपाय यस सन्दर्भमा भाषिक अभ्यास हो। भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकमा प्रयुक्त अभ्यासहरूलाई नमुना मानेर त्यस्तै थप अभ्यास गर्न गराउन सकियोस् भनी राखिने भएकाले यिनलाई नमुना अभ्यास पनि भनिन्छ। दुङ्गेल र दाहाल (२०६१)का विचारमा “भाषिक प्रयोगका सन्दर्भगत ज्ञान तथा सिप हासिल गर्न महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका खेल्ने उपयोगी साधन अभ्यास हो” (पृ. १०८)।

यसरी हेर्दा असल भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकमा पाठ्यक्रमद्वारा निर्धारित उद्देश्य पूरा हुने खालका अभ्यासहरू राखिनु पर्दछ। मूल पाठभन्दा निकै बढी अभ्यास खण्ड राखिनु पर्छ।

भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकमा अभ्यास योजनाको महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका हुन्छ। त्यसैले, हरेक पाठको पाठ्यांश सकिएपछि उपयुक्त अभ्यासहरू समावेश गर्ने गरी पाठ्यपुस्तक निर्माण योजना गराइनु पर्दछ। अभ्यास पाठको प्रकृतिअनुरूप हुनु पर्दछ, सरलदेखि जटिलताको क्रममा हुनु पर्दछ, विविधतामूलक हुनु पर्दछ, पाठ्यक्रमका अपेक्षा अनुरूप हुनु पर्दछ र विद्यार्थीका क्षमता र आवश्यकता तथा रुचिअनुकूल हुनु पर्दछ। विद्यार्थीको कक्षा र स्तर हेरी पहिला मौखिक र त्यसपछि लिखित अनि प्रयोगात्मक अभ्यासहरूलाई क्रमबद्ध एवम् विविधतापूर्ण बनाई समावेश गरिनुपर्दछ। अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरू वस्तुगत, विषयगत सबै प्रकारका हुनु पर्दछ, साथै सिपगत सन्तुलन तथा व्याकरणात्मक ज्ञान र सिपसँग पनि सम्बद्ध हुनु पर्दछ। जुन पाठबाट जे जस्ता व्याकरणात्मक अभ्यास

गराउन सजिलो हुन्छ त्यसै किसिमका व्याकरणात्मक विषयवस्तु तथा तिनको अभ्यास प्रक्रिया आगमनात्मक ढङ्ग र पाठ्यपुस्तक विधिको ढङ्गमा आबद्ध बनाउने योजना बनाउनु पर्छ। संवादात्मक विधाबाट बोलाइ र सुनाइका अभ्यासले प्राथमिकता पाउनु पर्छ भने कथा, निबन्ध तथा जीवनी आदि विधाबाट पढाइ र लेखाइ अभ्यासले प्राथमिकता पाउनु पर्छ। तल्ला कक्षाका लागि सतही किसिमका पहिचानात्मक तथा स्मरणात्मक अभ्यासहरू बढी उपयुक्त हुन्छन् भने माथिल्ला कक्षाहरूमा क्रमशः प्रयोगात्मक, उत्पादनात्मक एवम् सिर्जनात्मक अभ्यासहरू समावेश गर्दै जानु राम्रो हुन्छ। अतः पाठ्यपुस्तक निर्माण योजनामा अभ्यास योजनाको पनि सन्तुलित र वैज्ञानिक उल्लेख हुनु जरुरी छ। (पौडेल, २०६७, पृ. २६०-२६१)।

भाषा अभ्यास र पुनरावृत्तिका माध्यमबाट सिकिने सामाजिक वस्तु हो। भाषाशिक्षणको मुख्य उद्देश्य भन्नु नै विद्यार्थीलाई भाषिक सिपमा सक्षम बनाउनु हो। यस सम्बन्धमा आफ्नो दृष्टिकोण राख्दै बराल (२०७४) लेख्छन्: “भाषाको बोध र अभिव्यक्ति दुवै सिप विकासका लागि प्रशस्त अभ्यास गराउनु पर्छ। विद्यार्थीमा नभएका भाषिक सिपहरू प्राप्त गर्न र प्राप्त भएका सिपलाई परिष्कृत, परिमार्जित र विकसित तुल्याउन भाषाशिक्षणमा अभ्यास तथा पुनरावृत्ति आवश्यक पर्दछ” (पृ. ४)। यस कार्यका लागि भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक अत्यन्त उपयोगी हुन सक्छ। भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकका सहयोगले शिक्षकले योजनाबद्ध रूपमा उपयुक्त शिक्षण विधिको छनोट गरेर भाषाशिक्षण गर्छन्। विद्यार्थीलाई उपयुक्त अभ्यास गराउँछन् र शिक्षण सिकाइ उपलब्धिको मूल्याङ्कन गर्छन्। विद्यार्थीहरू पनि भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तककै सहयोगले विभिन्न खाले भाषिक अभ्यास गर्दै भाषिक सिपहरू सिक्छन्। पुनरावृत्ति गरी पढ्छन्, गृहकार्य गर्छन् र भाषिक सबलता हासिल गर्छन्। त्यसैले, भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकमा यस्ता खालका अभ्यासहरू हुनै पर्दछ।



पौडेल (२०६७)का अनुसार “संस्थागत रूपमा नेपाली भाषाशिक्षणको थालनी सर्वप्रथम वि. सं. १९५८मा देवशमशेरले खोलेका भाषा पाठशालाहरूबाट भएको पाइन्छ । उक्त भाषा पाठशालाहरूमा शिक्षण गर्नका लागि तत्कालीन नेपालका वरिष्ठ शिक्षाविद् जयपृथ्वीबहादुर सिंहले *अक्षराङ्क शिक्षा* नामक नेपाली भाषा र अङ्कगणितका आधारभूत कुरा समावेश गरिएको पहिलो पाठ्यपुस्तक तयार गरेका थिए” (पृ. २६३) । तथापि त्यो नेपाली भाषा शिक्षण गर्ने प्रयोजनले मात्र तयार पारिएको नभएर नेपाली भाषामा लेखिएको नेपाली र गणित पनि पढाउन मिल्ने पाठ्यपुस्तक हो । पौडेल, भट्टराई र बराल (२०७५)का अनुसार “राष्ट्रिय शिक्षा पद्धतिको योजना २०२८ लागु भएपछि नेपाल सरकारको शिक्षा मन्त्रालयअन्तर्गत पाठ्यक्रम विकास केन्द्र स्थापना गरी सोही पाठ्यक्रमानुसारका पाठ्यपुस्तकहरू सम्पादन गर्ने कामको प्रारम्भ भयो । पाठ्यपुस्तक प्रकाशन तथा वितरणको नेतृत्व जनक शिक्षा सामग्री केन्द्रलाई दिइयो” (पृ. ९८) । यस क्रममा अन्य विषयका साथमा नेपाली भाषाका पाठ्यपुस्तक पनि छापिए । त्यहाँदेखि हालसम्म आइपुग्दा सबै तह/कक्षाका पाठ्यपुस्तकहरू दर्जनौँपल्ट परिवर्तन भइसकेका छन् । यसमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकको पछिल्लो संस्करण २०८० हो ।

पौडेल (२०६७)का अनुसार विद्यालयीय तहका प्रायः सबै कक्षाका नेपाली भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकमा अभ्यासको पर्याप्त र प्रशस्त व्यवस्था गरिएको पाइन्छ । हरेक पाठमा पाठका प्रकृति र शिक्षणीय अभिप्राय अथवा विधागत प्रयोजन र पाठ्यवस्तुअनुरूप हुने गरी अभ्यासहरू राखिएका देखिन्छन् । अभ्यासमा स्तर र आवश्यकताअनुरूप प्रशस्त विविधता दिने प्रयास गरिएको भेटिन्छ; सिप सन्तुलन ल्याउने प्रयास गरिएको देखिन्छ; मौखिक, लिखित र प्रयोगात्मक सबै प्रकारका अभ्यासहरूको निर्वाह गरिएको पाइन्छ; सिर्जनात्मक अभ्यास, व्याकरणात्मक अभ्यास, भाषातात्विक अभ्यास, शब्दभण्डारगत अभ्यास आदि सबैको प्रबन्ध मिलाइएको पाइन्छ र तिनलाई सरलदेखि जटिलताको क्रममा स्तरणीकृत गर्ने प्रयास पनि गरिएको देखिन्छ

। त्यसै गरी उच्चारण, सस्वर पठन, मौनपठन, द्रुतपठन, पठनबोध, श्रुतिबोध, कथन, वर्णन, वक्तृता, संवाद, छलफल, प्रश्नोत्तर, प्रयोग, खोज, अनुमान, व्याख्या, विवेचना, रचना, निर्देशित रचना, स्वतन्त्र रचना, शब्दनिर्माण, वर्णविन्यास, चिह्नप्रयोग, श्रुतिलेखन आदि सबै प्रकारका अभ्यासात्मक नमुनाहरू प्रस्तुत गरिएको पाइन्छ अनि प्रश्नगत विविधता, कार्यकलापगत विविधता र स्तरयुक्तता पनि अपनाइएको भेटिन्छ ।

यिनै उद्देश्य/प्रयोजन पूरा गर्ने गरी नेपाली भाषापाठ्यपुस्तकका कथाका पाठहरूमा विद्यार्थीले शिक्षकका सहयोगमा वा स्वाध्ययनबाट श्रुतिबोध, सस्वरवाचन, शुद्ध उच्चारण तथा द्रुत किसिमको मौन पठन गर्न मिल्ने खालका अभ्यास राख्नु पर्छ । यसै गरी अभ्यासहरू शब्दार्थ तथा पदपदावलीको अर्थ/आशय, कथाको सारांश, विद्यार्थी आफू आफूमा प्रश्नोत्तर, कथाभित्रका शब्दभण्डार तथा उखानटुक्काको प्रयोग गर्न सक्ने किसिमका पनि राख्नु पर्छ । त्यस्तै घटनाक्रम तलमाथि पारिएका वा बिगारिएका विद्यार्थीहरूले मिलाउन, छोटो बोधप्रश्नहरूको उत्तर लेख्न, आफूले पढेको कथाका आधारमा अर्को कथा रचन, पाठकै कथा वा नयाँ कथा पढ्न वा स्वतन्त्र रूपमा कथा रचना गर्न सक्ने खालका अभ्यास पनि यस सन्दर्भमा अपेक्षित हुन्छन् । यतिमात्र नभएर कथाका विशिष्ट अंशहरूको व्याख्या/सप्रसङ्ग व्याख्या तथा विवेचना गर्ने सिप सिकाउन वा अभ्यास गराउन, निश्चित अंश भिकी त्यहाँबाट बुँदा टिपोट गराउन, निश्चित अंशहरूको (सम्भव भए पुरै कथाको) श्रुतिलेखन गराएर वर्णविन्यास र लेख्य चिह्नसम्बन्धी शुद्धाशुद्धको जाँच गर्न, कथ्य र लेख्य रूपमा फरक हुने शब्दहरू खोजी तुलना र आपसमा परिवर्तन गर्न, विद्यार्थीलाई समूहमा बाँडेर कथासँग मिल्ने खालको अभिनय गराउन, उनीहरूलाई विभिन्न खाले वस्तुगत र सङ्क्षिप्त उत्तरात्मक तथा पठनबोधसम्बन्धी छोटो प्रश्नहरू निर्माण गर्न सक्ने बनाउन, शब्दभण्डार र भाषातत्त्वसम्बन्धी विभिन्न खालका अभ्यासहरू गराउन साथै अलिक माथिल्ला कक्षाका विद्यार्थीहरूलाई कथाको समीक्षा गर्न सक्ने खालका अभ्यासहरू राख्नु अनिवार्य हुन्छ ।

माध्यमिक तहका नेपाली भाषा विषयका पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठमा पनि माथि उल्लेख गरिएका सबै खाले अभ्यासहरू राख्नु उपयुक्त हुन्छ । कतिपय कार्यकलापहरू तल्ला तह र कक्षाका सन्दर्भमा अलिक बढ्ता साथै कतिपय माथिल्ला तह र कक्षाका सन्दर्भमा अलिक बढ्ता प्रभावकारी हुन सक्छन् । तथापि, यी कामकुरा गर्न सक्ने अभ्यास नभएमा कथा शिक्षणको उद्देश्य/प्रयोजन पूरा हुँदैन । सुनाइ, बोलाइ, पढाइ र लेखाइ जस्ता चारै सिपको अभ्यासमा सघाउने कथा श्रवण, कथाकथन साथै कथाको विषयवस्तुसँग सम्बन्धित विवेचना गर्न लगाउनेलगायतका अन्य कार्यहरू गराउन सकिने अभ्यासहरू चयन गर्नु पर्दछ । यसका साथै त्यस्ता कार्यहरू गर्दा गराउँदा कतिपय कामकुराहरूलाई एकै ठाउँमा र कतिपयलाई अलग रूपमा अनि कतिपयलाई कक्षाकार्य र कतिपयलाई गृहकार्यका रूपमा पनि गराउन सहयोग गर्ने खालका अभ्यास राख्नु पर्दछ ।

अन्य विषयका पाठ्यपुस्तकभन्दा हाम्रो विद्यालयीय स्तरका विभिन्न तह र कक्षाका भाषा विषय (यस सन्दर्भमा नेपाली भाषा विषय) का पाठ्यपुस्तकहरूमा भाषिक रूपले विशेष महत्त्व राख्ने यी कुराहरूमाथि सूक्ष्म रूपले ध्यान दिएर कुनै पनि विधाका पाठभित्र अभ्यास राखिए नराखिएका बारेमा आवश्यक अध्ययन भएको पाइँदैन । यस्तो अवस्था सबै कक्षाका नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका सबै विधाका पाठका अभ्यास रखाइमा रहेको पाइन्छ । अध्ययनका लागि छानिएको यस पाठ्यपुस्तकमा त्यस्ता आवश्यक पक्षहरू कति र कसरी समेटिएका छन् त भन्ने कुरा नै यस अध्ययनको समस्या हो ।

यस अध्ययनसँग मिल्ने केही पूर्वकार्यहरूलाई हेर्दा रिमाल (२०७६)ले कथा विधामा चारओटै सिप विकास गर्ने खालका पठनबोध, घटना तथा अनुभव वर्णन, सामूहिक र व्यक्तिगत कार्य, भावव्याख्या, कथानक, पात्र, परिवेश आदिको वर्णन, कथा लेखन जस्ता विविध अभ्यासहरू समावेश गर्नुपर्ने धारणा प्रस्तुत गरेका छन् । यसै गरी घिमिरे (२०७६)ले विधाका प्रकृतिअनुरूप घटनावर्णन, अनुमान गर्ने प्रश्नहरू रहेको उल्लेख गर्दै सिपगत सन्तुलन, सारांश लेखन, तार्किक क्षमता र

सिर्जनात्मक क्षमता विकास गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरूमा अझ जोड दिनुपर्ने उल्लेख गरेका छन् । त्यस्तै काफ्ले (सन् २०२०)ले माध्यमिक तहका नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका नमुना अभ्यासमा बोलाइ सिपको विकासका लागि मौखिक छलफल, भूमिका प्रदर्शन, विषय र सन्दर्भअनुकूल संवाद आदि जस्ता अभ्यासहरू बढाउनुपर्ने भन्ने कुरा अगाडि सारेका छन् । घिमिरे (सन् २०२२)ले नमुना अभ्यासमा सुनाइ पाठ र त्यससम्बद्ध अभ्यासलाई छुट्टै शीर्षक दिई सुनाइ र बोलाइ सिपका अभ्यास गराउन खोज्नु अध्ययनीय पुस्तकको नवीन पक्ष भएको भन्दै सुनाइ र बोलाइका अभ्यासमा लेखाइसम्बद्ध प्रश्नहरू समेत रहेकाले तिनको सट्टा यस खण्डमा सुनाइ बोलाइको मात्र अभ्यास गराउँदा अझ प्रभावकारी हुने सुझाव प्रस्तुत गरेका छन् । उनले माइली (सन् २०२०)को अध्ययनअनुसार जाकर्ताका भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका नमुना अभ्यासहरूमा नयाँ शब्दभण्डार र सहपाठी समूहकार्य गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू समावेश नभएकाले असल पाठ्यपुस्तक भन्न नमिल्ने निष्कर्षमा पुगिएको छ, भन्ने कुरा पनि उल्लेख गरेका छन् ।

यसरी यसअघि यससँग केही हदसम्म मिल्ने खालका अध्ययन अनुसन्धानहरू भए पनि यही अर्थात् कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक (२०८०)का कथा विधा शिक्षणको प्रयोजन र पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपताका आधारमा केन्द्रित भएर यस खालको अध्ययन अनुसन्धान नभएकाले यही रिक्तता पूरा गर्ने उद्देश्यले यो अनुसन्धानात्मक लेख तयार गरिएको हो । त्यसैले, प्रस्तुत अध्ययनमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक (२०८०)का कथा विधाका पाठपछि राखिएका अभ्यासहरूको सङ्ख्या, प्रकार पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपता तथा विद्यार्थीमा भाषिक सिप विकास गराउने दृष्टिले तिनको उपयुक्तताको मूल्याङ्कन गर्न निम्नानुसारका अनुसन्धानात्मक प्रश्नहरूको प्रयोग गरिएको छ :

१. अभ्यासहरूको सङ्ख्या तथा प्रकार कति र कस्तो छ ?

२. ती अभ्यास पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूप छन् ?

३. विद्यार्थीमा भाषिक सिप विकास गराउने दृष्टिले ती अभ्यासहरू उपयुक्त छन् ?

### अध्ययन विधि

यस अध्ययनमा गुणात्मक अध्ययन ढाँचामा आधारित रही कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तक (२०८०)मा समाविष्ट कथा विधाका अभ्यासबाट पुस्तकालयीय अध्ययनमार्फत् सामग्री सङ्कलन र वर्णनात्मक विधिको उपयोग गरी प्राप्त तथ्यको व्याख्या विश्लेषण गरिएको छ। उक्त पुस्तकका कथा पाठहरूका अभ्यासमा समावेश भएका भाषिक संरचना र वर्णविन्यासबाहेकका प्रश्नहरूलाई अध्ययनको नमुना मानिएको छ। भाषिक प्रश्नका विभिन्न प्रकार समेटिने गरी विषयवस्तु विश्लेषणको खाका निर्माण गरेपछि तिनलाई सूचीबद्ध गरी उद्देश्यमा किटान गरिएका आधारबमोजिम तिनको तुलना गरिएको छ। त्यसपछि पाठका नमुना अभ्यासमा रहेका प्रश्नहरूबाट विद्यार्थीमा भाषिक सिपगत सिकाइ उपलब्धि हासिल हुन सके नसकेका साथै ती पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूप भएनभएका भन्ने कुरा हेरिएको छ। यससँगै तिनबाट विद्यार्थीमा कथा विधागत सिकाइ उपलब्धि हासिल हुन सक्ने वा नसक्ने कुराको खोजी गरिएको छ। त्यसपछि विभिन्न उपशीर्षकहरूका आधारमा कथा विधा शिक्षणका प्रयोजन हासिल हुन अभ्यासहरू के कति सबल छन् भन्ने कुरा पहिचान गरिएको छ। कथाको विधागत शिक्षण प्रयोजनलाई ख्याल गरी पुनरवलोकन खण्डमा उल्लेख गरिएका सैद्धान्तिक दृष्टिकोणलाई आधार मानी पाठ्यपुस्तकमा अभ्यासात्मक प्रश्नको पर्याप्तता र अपर्याप्तताको पहिचान, र वर्णन विश्लेषणबाट निष्कर्षमा पुग्ने काम भएको छ।

विश्लेषणमा बराल (२०७४)का निम्न निष्कर्षलाई प्रमुख आधार मानिएको छ :

विद्यार्थीहरूमा आफूले सुनेको कुनै कथाको घटनाक्रम मिलाई कथन गर्ने सिप विकास गर्नु, शब्द संरचना, शब्द भण्डार, वाक्य संरचना, र शैली जस्ता कुराहरूसम्बन्धी क्षमताविस्तार तथा ज्ञान हासिल गर्नु, कथामा प्रयुक्त प्राविधिक, पारिभाषिक, पर्यायवाची, विपरीतार्थी, अनेकार्थीजस्ता

शब्द तथा उखान टुक्का आदिको प्रयोग क्षमता विकास गर्नु, विद्यार्थीलाई विभिन्न विषयवस्तुका बारेमा जानकारी प्रदान गर्नु, कथा सुनेर र पढेर त्यसको मूल भाव बुझ्ने क्षमताको विकास गर्नु, सिर्जनात्मक रूपमा कथा भन्ने र लेख्ने सिप विकासमा सघाउनु, क्रम भङ्ग भएका विभिन्न घटनाहरूको घटना क्रम मिलाउने सिप सिकाउन मद्दत गर्नु, द्रुत पठन क्षमताको अभिवृद्धि गर्नु, भाषिक सिपहरूको विकास गर्नु, मानवीय मूल्यमान्यता भल्कने गुणहरू विकास गर्नु, कथाका मुख्य तत्त्वहरूका आधारमा कथा समीक्षा गर्ने सिप विकासको आधार खडा गर्नु आदि कथा शिक्षणको प्रयोजन हो। (पृ. ४१-४२)

शर्मा र पौडेल (२०६८)का अनुसार कथा शिक्षण गर्दा सुरुमा कथाको सामान्य परिचय दिने, शिक्षकले मौखिक रूपमा सङ्क्षेपमा कथा सुनाउने, श्रुतिबोधोत्तर अभ्यास गराउने, सस्वर वाचन गराउने, उच्चारण दोष निवारण गर्ने, द्रुत मौन पठन गराउने, शब्दार्थ र पदपदावलीको आशयगत अर्थबोध गराउने, शब्द वा पदपदावलीलाई वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्ने अभ्यास गराउने, समय तोकेर वा नतोकेर निश्चित अनुच्छेदको मौन पठन गराउने, बोध प्रश्नोत्तर गराउने, छलफल गराउने, गृहकार्यका रूपमा पूरै कथा पढ्न लगाउने, निश्चित अंश वा पूरै कथा भन्न लगाउने, कथाका आदि भाग, मध्य भाग र अन्त्य भागका कुनै अंश भन्न लगाउने, कथाको शृङ्खला विग्रिएका बुँदा दिएर शृङ्खला मिलाउन लगाउने, बुँदा दिएर निर्देशित कथा रचना गर्न लगाउने, स्वतन्त्र ढङ्गले कथा लेखेर ल्याउन गृहकार्य दिने, कथाका विशिष्ट पङ्क्तिको व्याख्या र सप्रसङ्ग व्याख्या गर्ने अभ्यास गराउने, विवेचनात्मक अभ्यास गराउने, सारांश भन्न वा लेख्न लगाउने, सुनिश्चित अंशको बुँदा टिपोट गराउने, श्रुतिलेखन गराएर वर्णविन्यास र लेख्यचिह्न प्रयोगसम्बन्धी शुद्धीकरण गर्ने, भाषाका कथ्य र लेख्य रूपको परस्पर परिवर्तन अभ्यास गराउने, शब्दभण्डारका विविध पक्षहरूको अभ्यास गराउने, विभिन्न भाषातात्त्विक अभ्यास गराउने आदि क्रमशः गर्न सकिन्छ। उपर्युक्तमध्ये

आवश्यकताअनुसार सबै वा मुख्य मुख्य कुराहरू क्रमशः पृथक् पृथक् र संयुक्त ढङ्गले गराउने, कक्षाकार्य र गृहकार्यको उपयोग गर्ने र आवश्यकताअनुसार विविध शिक्षणसामग्री तथा सन्दर्भसामग्रीहरूको पनि सक्दो उपयोग गर्ने गर्नु राम्रो हुन्छ। यहाँ मूलतः यही सिद्धान्तमा केन्द्रित भएर कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा विधामा प्रयुक्त अभ्यासहरूको अध्ययन र विश्लेषण गरिएको छ।

### विश्लेषण

नेपाली भाषापाठ्यपुस्तक (२०८०)मा “घरभङ्गडा”, “शत्रु”, “कर्तव्य”, र “आयाम” गरी चार ओटा पाठ समावेश गरिएका छन्। यसमा अभ्यासहरूलाई शब्दभण्डार, बोध र अभिव्यक्ति, सुनाइ र बोलाइ, भाषिक संरचना र वर्णविन्यास साथै सिर्जना र परियोजना गरी पाँच ओटा उपशीर्षकमा वर्गीकरण गरिएको छ। प्रस्तुत अध्ययनमा भाषिक संरचना र वर्णविन्यासबाहेकका अभ्यासहरूको अध्ययन विश्लेषण गरिएको छ। “घरभङ्गडा”मा शब्दभण्डार तथा बोध र अभिव्यक्तिभित्र क्रमशः पाँच र चौध ओटा प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन्। “शत्रु”मा क्रमशः पाँच र सत्र ओटा रहेका छन्। यसै गरी “कर्तव्य”मा चार र सोह्र ओटा रहेका छन् भने “आयाम”मा पाँच र चौध ओटा प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन्। चारै पाठमा सुनाइ र बोलाइ साथै सिर्जना र परियोजनाका प्रश्न भने दुई दुई ओटा रहेका छन्। चारै पाठमा क्रमशः हेर्दा जम्माजम्मी तेइस, छब्विस, चौबिस साथै तेइस ओटा प्रश्न र प्रायः प्रश्नहरूमा उपप्रश्नहरू रहेका छन्। यस अध्ययनमा यी अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरूलाई पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपता साथै कथा विधाको शिक्षणीय प्रयोजनअनुरूपताका कोणबाट हेरी सबल र सुधारात्मक पक्षको विश्लेषण गरिएको छ।

### पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपका सिपगत अपेक्षा

यस उपशीर्षकमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रमका अपेक्षित सिकाइ उपलब्धिहरूमध्ये कथा विधाबाट हासिल हुन सक्ने सिकाइ उपलब्धिहरूलाई सुनाइ र बोलाइका सिप, पढाइ सिप र लेखाइ सिप गरी निम्नानुसारका तीन वर्गमा

विभाजन गरी सोहीअनुरूप अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरूको अन्तर्सम्बन्ध केलाइएको छ।

### सुनाइ र बोलाइ सिप

कक्षा दशको अनिवार्य नेपाली भाषापाठ्यक्रममा सुनाइ र बोलाइ सिपका सिकाइ उपलब्धिहरूलाई कथा विधासम्बद्ध गराउँदा विद्यार्थीलाई शुद्ध र स्पष्ट उच्चारण तथा मौखिक वर्णन गर्न, अरूले भनेका कुरा ध्यानपूर्वक सुन्नु, र पूर्णबोधसहित शिष्ट भाषामा मौखिक प्रतिक्रिया व्यक्त गर्न, विधागत प्रकृतिका आधारमा पाठ सुन्नु र त्यसका संरचना पहिचान गर्न, तोकिएका पाठ/पाठांशबाट प्रश्न बनाई तिनको उत्तर भन्नु, पाठमा प्रयुक्त शीर्षक, घटना, परिवेश, चरित्र र भावका बारेमा तर्कसहित छलफल र प्रश्नोत्तर गर्न, र पाठ सुनेर तार्किक र समीक्षात्मक प्रतिक्रिया व्यक्त गर्न सक्ने बनाउने जस्ता अपेक्षा गरिएको छ।

उक्त आधारमा अभ्यासहरूको विश्लेषण गर्दा विश्लेष्य पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठमा शुद्ध उच्चारण गर्ने, तोकिएका प्रश्नको उत्तर भन्ने, तोकिएका विषयवस्तुमा छलफल गर्ने, भाषिक अभिनय गर्ने, तोकिएका विषयमा मौखिक अभिव्यक्ति दिने, ठिक बेठिक छुट्टयाउने, कक्षामा कथाकथन गर्ने, कथाभित्रका तोकिएका संवाद कसले कसलाई भनेका हुन् भन्ने कुरा बताउने, तोकिएको पाठ पढी मौखिक रूपमा खाली ठाउँ भर्ने र तोकिएका प्रश्नको उत्तर दिने, कथाका घटना, पात्र र परिवेशमा केन्द्रित भई कक्षामा सुनाउने, र तोकिएको कथांशबाट प्रश्न बनाई तिनको उत्तर भन्नु लगाउने खालका प्रश्नहरू समावेश गरिएको हुँदा सिलसिलाबद्ध प्रस्तुति र मौखिक प्रतिक्रियाका दृष्टिले विद्यार्थीमा सुनाइ र बोलाइसम्बन्धी आवश्यक सिप विकास हुन सक्ने अवस्था देखिन्छ। पाठ सुनेर तार्किक र समीक्षात्मक प्रतिक्रिया व्यक्त गर्न सक्ने बनाउने अपेक्षा पूरा हुने स्पष्ट आधार नदेखिए पनि समग्रमा भने यी अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरू पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपताका आधारमा सबल अर्थात् पाठ्यक्रमको अपेक्षाअनुरूप नै छन्।

### पढाइ सिप

यस सिपसम्बद्ध पाठ्यक्रम निर्दिष्ट सिकाइ उपलब्धिहरूलाई कथा विधासम्बद्ध गर्दा विद्यार्थीलाई खास गरी सस्वर वाचन गर्न, लिखित सामग्रीलाई सन्दर्भ र भावअनुसार गति मिलाई पढ्न, पढाइको गति विकास गर्ने गरी द्रुत र मौन पठन गर्न, पाठमा प्रयुक्त विशिष्ट अंश पहिचान गरी व्याख्या र विश्लेषण गर्न सक्ने गरी पढ्न, समीक्षात्मक विचार दिन सक्ने गरी पढ्न, निर्धारित पाठ पढी सन्दर्भ र परिवेशमा आधारित भई प्रश्नोत्तर गर्न, पाठ पढी विषयवस्तुको व्याख्या, विश्लेषण र समीक्षा गर्न, हिज्जे र लेख्य चिह्नका सङ्केतका आधारमा शुद्धसँग पढ्न, साहित्यिक विधाका पाठमा व्यक्त भएका सामाजिक तथा सांस्कृतिक सन्दर्भका बारेमा विश्लेषणात्मक प्रतिक्रिया दिन सक्ने गरी पढ्न, अनुमान, निष्कर्ष, सारांश, सन्देश र संश्लेषणको प्रयोजन व्यक्त गर्न सक्ने गरी पाठहरू पढ्न, पाठमा प्रस्तुत मुख्य घटनालाई क्रम मिलाई अभिव्यक्त गर्न सक्ने गरी पढ्न, र विश्लेषणात्मक तथा समालोचनात्मक सोचको निर्माण गर्ने गरी विभिन्न प्रकारका लिखित सामग्री पढ्न सक्ने बनाउने भन्ने अपेक्षा देखिन्छ।

यस आधारमा विश्लेष्य पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठमा राखिएका अभ्यासहरू हेर्दा शुद्ध उच्चारण, गति र यति मिलाई सिङ्गै पाठ वा पाठश सस्वर वाचन, पढ्न लाग्ने समय हेरी मौन पठन र कथाशहरू पढी सोधिएका प्रश्नको लामो, छोटो, बोधात्मक उत्तर दिने साथै त्यहाँबाट प्रश्न निर्माण गरी उत्तर पहिल्याउने जस्ता प्रश्नहरू समावेश गरिएका छन्। यसै गरी यहाँ पठनबोध गर्ने, घटनाक्रम मिलाउने, पाठकेन्द्रित निश्चित समस्यामाथि छलफल गर्ने, भाषिक अभिव्यक्तिसहित अभिनय गर्ने, लेखाइ र उच्चारणको भिन्नता पहिचान गर्ने, कथासार तथा समीक्षा प्रस्तुत गर्ने, र कुनै सन्दर्भ पढी तोकिएका कार्यहरू गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू राखिएका छन्। यहाँ मौन पठनबाट द्रुतपठनको अपेक्षा पूरा गराउन खोजिएका कारण द्रुतपठन नै भनेर किटान गरी अभ्यास नराखिनु, र विश्लेषणात्मक प्रतिक्रिया दिन सक्ने गरी पढ्ने अपेक्षा पूरा हुने खालका अभ्यासको कमी हुनु जस्ता

सुधारात्मक कुराबाहेक समग्रमा यी प्रश्नहरू पढाइ क्षमता विकासमा सहयोगी अर्थात् पाठ्यक्रमको अपेक्षाअनुरूपकै देखिन्छन्।

### लेखाइ सिप

यस सिपसम्बद्ध पाठ्यक्रम निर्दिष्ट सिकाइ उपलब्धिहरूलाई कथा विधासम्बद्ध गर्दा पाठमा आधारित भई तार्किक र मौलिक प्रश्नोत्तर गर्न, सार लेख्न, श्रुतिलेखन र अनुलेखन गर्न, पाठको व्याख्या, विश्लेषण, समीक्षा गर्न, देखेका, सुनेका, पढेका र अनुभव गरेका घटना र परिवेशका बारेमा सिलसिला मिलाएर तर्कसहित प्रभावकारी रूपमा वर्णन गर्न, विभिन्न खाले उखानटुक्काहरूलाई सन्दर्भअनुसार अर्थ स्पष्ट हुने गरी वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्न, निर्देशित, स्वतन्त्र र सिर्जनात्मक लेखन गर्न, विभिन्न विषयमा विवरणात्मक, वर्णनात्मक, तार्किक, विश्लेषणात्मक, समीक्षात्मक र समालोचनात्मक अभिव्यक्ति दिन सक्षम बनाउने अपेक्षा राखिएको छ।

यी अपेक्षाका सापेक्षतामा विश्लेष्य पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठमा राखिएका अभ्यासका प्रश्नहरू हेर्दा शब्दार्थ लेख्ने, सामान्य शब्द तथा उखान टुक्कालाई वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्ने, अनुकरणात्मक शब्द पहिचान गर्ने, कोशक्रम मिलाएर राख्ने, घटनाक्रम मिलाएर लेख्ने, विभिन्न प्रश्नहरूको अति छोटो, छोटो, लामो उत्तर लेख्ने, व्याख्या, सप्रसङ्ग व्याख्या तथा विवेचना गर्ने, समीक्षा गर्ने, दिइएका बुँदालाई आधार मानी थप घटना निर्माण गरेर कथा लेख्ने, श्रुतिलेखन गर्ने, कथांशबाट छोटो उत्तरात्मक प्रश्न निर्माण गरी उक्त प्रश्नको उत्तर लेख्ने, तोकिएका पात्रको चरित्रचित्रण गर्ने, तोकिएका प्रश्नको तर्क दिएर पुष्टि गर्ने, कथासार लेख्ने, शब्द र अर्थका बिच जोडा मिलाउने, उखानटुक्का पहिचान गरी लेख्ने, निश्चित प्रश्नमा केन्द्रित भएर कारणसहित आफ्नो प्रतिक्रिया लेख्ने, आफूले पढेको पाठबाहिरको कुनै कथाको घटना, पात्र र परिवेशको समीक्षा गरी कक्षामा सुनाउने, कक्षामा प्रयुक्त अर्को भाषाबाट प्रभावित शब्दलाई नेपाली भाषाको मानक रूपमा लेख्ने, र कथा सिर्जना गर्ने खालका राखिएका छन्। यिनका विशेषतालाई हेर्दा किटानी साथ अनुलेखन भनेर कुनै प्रश्न नराखिएको भए पनि बाँकी

अपेक्षाहरू यिनले पूरा गर्न सक्ने देखिन्छ । यस आधारमा हेर्दा यी अभ्यास पनि पाठ्यक्रमको अपेक्षाअनुरूपकै देखिन्छन् । समग्रमा कथा विधाका पाठहरूमा सुनाइ र बोलाइ सिपका तुलनामा क्रमशः पढाइ र लेखाइ सिप विकास गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू बढ्ता प्रयोग भएका छन् । कथा विधाका नमुना अभ्यासबाट पाठ्यक्रमले अपेक्षा गरेका सुनाइ र बोलाइ सिपको थप विकासका लागि अभ्यासहरूको पर्याप्त र सन्तुलित व्यवस्था गर्नमा थप ध्यान पुऱ्याउनुपर्ने देखिन्छ ।

### कथा शिक्षणको विधागत प्रयोजनअनुरूपको अपेक्षा

बराल (२०७४)का अनुसार पाठ्यपुस्तकमा साहित्यिक विधाहरू समावेश गर्नुका साहित्यिक आस्वादन र भाषिक सिप विकास गरी मुख्य दुई प्रयोजनहरू रहन्छन् । सामान्यतया तल्ला कक्षाहरूमा सिपगत प्रयोजन बढी र क्रमशः माथिल्ला कक्षाहरूमा आस्वादनीय प्रयोजनहरू बढी सक्रिय रहन्छन् । भाषिक सिपगत प्रयोजनहरूमा विद्यार्थीमा सुनाइ, बोलाइ, पढाइ र लेखाइ जस्ता ग्रहण र अभिव्यक्ति सिपहरूको विकास गराउनु रहन्छन् भने आस्वादनीय प्रयोजनहरूमा साहित्यिक कृतिको आशय बोध, व्यवहारमा सकारात्मक परिवर्तन, सामाजिक तथा सांस्कृतिक मूल्यमान्यता, र देशप्रेम आदिको भावना विकास गराउनु रहन्छन् । तल्ला तथा माथिल्ला तह र कक्षामा यसको शिक्षणीय प्रयोजनमा केही फरक परे पनि समग्रमा भने विद्यालयीय तहको भाषाशिक्षण र त्यसभित्रको कथा शिक्षणको प्रयोजन मिल्ने देखिन्छ ।

यी विधामध्ये पनि विद्यालय स्तरको माध्यमिक तहको कक्षा दशमा कथा विधा शिक्षण गर्नुका विधागत उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजन विद्यार्थीहरूमा सस्वर तथा मौन पठन क्षमता, मौखिक तथा लिखित प्रश्नोत्तर क्षमता, सिलसिलाबद्ध प्रस्तुति गर्ने क्षमता आदि बढाउनु, आफूले सुनेको कुनै कथाको घटनाक्रम मिलाई कथन गर्ने सिप विकास गर्नु, शब्दसंरचना, शब्दभण्डार, वाक्यसंरचना, शैली जस्ता कुराहरूसम्बन्धी क्षमताविस्तार तथा ज्ञान हासिल गर्नु, कथामा प्रयुक्त प्राविधिक, पारिभाषिक, पर्यायवाची, विपरीतार्थी, अनेकार्थी जस्ता शब्द तथा

उखान टुक्का आदिको प्रयोग क्षमता विकास गर्नु, विद्यार्थीलाई विभिन्न विषयवस्तुका बारेमा जानकारी प्रदान गर्नु, कथा सुनेर र पढेर त्यसको मूल भाव बुझ्ने तथा विशिष्ट पङ्क्तिको व्याख्या गर्ने क्षमताको विकास गर्नु, सिर्जनात्मक रूपमा कथा भन्ने र लेख्ने सिप विकासमा सघाउनु, क्रम भङ्ग भएका विभिन्न घटनाहरूको घटना क्रम मिलाउने सिप सिकाउनु मद्दत गर्नु, द्रुत पठन क्षमताको अभिवृद्धि गर्नु, भाषिक सिपहरूको विकास गर्नु, मानवीय मूल्यमान्यता भल्कने गुणहरू विकास गर्नु, र कथा समीक्षा गर्ने सिप विकासको आधार खडा गर्नु आदिलाई मानिन्छ ।

नेपाली भाषाको माध्यमिक शिक्षा अन्तर्गतका कक्षा नौ र दशको पाठ्यक्रम (२०७८) ले सिकाइ सहजीकरण प्रक्रियाअन्तर्गत “विधाका माध्यमबाट सिपहरूको शिक्षण” उपशीर्षकमा बताएका कुरालाई आधार मान्दा कथा विधाका माध्यमबाट सिपहरूको शिक्षणको उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजन विद्यार्थीहरूमा कथनात्मक अभिव्यक्ति सिपको विकास गर्नु हो । आख्यानात्मक पाठ भाषा शिक्षणका साधन हुन् । नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रममा यिनलाई सुनाइ, बोलाइ, पढाइ र लेखाइका माध्यमका रूपमा राखिएको छ । आख्यानात्मक पाठको शिक्षणमा कथाश्रवण, कथाकथन, संरचना पहिचान, कथा निर्माण, सस्वर तथा मौनपठन, संरचना पहिचान, पठनबोध, प्रश्नोत्तर, चरित्रचित्रण र पात्र तुलना, बुँदाटिपोट, व्याख्या, सारांश, घटनाक्रम मिलान, कथा सार, नयाँ शब्दको उच्चारण, अर्थ बोध र प्रयोग, अनुलेखन, श्रुतिलेखन र सिर्जनात्मक लेखन जस्ता क्रियाकलाप गराउनुपर्दछ । यसको अर्थ कथा विधाका पाठमा राखिने अभ्यासहरू कथा शिक्षणको उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजनमा आधारित हुनु पर्दछ । यहाँ उक्त प्रयोजन हासिल हुन सक्ने वा नसक्ने दृष्टिले अभ्यासहरूको विश्लेषण गरिएको छ ।

### शब्दभण्डारसम्बन्धी अभ्यास

कथा पाठका नमुना अभ्यासमा शब्दभण्डारसम्बन्धी अभ्यासहरूमा शब्दकोशको सहायताले शब्दको अर्थ लेख्ने अनि वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्ने, शब्द र तिनले दिने अर्थबिच जोडा मिलाउने,

पाठबाट अनुकरणात्मक शब्द पहिचान गर्ने, शब्दहरूलाई कोशक्रममा राख्ने, पाठबाट अनेकार्थक शब्द पहिचान गरी तिनले दिने अनेक अर्थ खोज्ने, दिइएका उखान टुक्काहरूलाई अर्थ खुल्ने गरी वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्ने र पाठ वा पाठांशबाट उखानटुक्का खोजेर यिनको प्रयोग गरी अनुच्छेद लेख्ने, पाठबाट सिङ्गो शब्द छान्ने, र समावेशक र समावेश्य शब्द पहिचान गर्ने जस्ता प्रश्नहरूसहित प्रशस्त मात्रामा विविधता रहेको पाइन्छ । यस्ता प्रश्नहरूले विद्यार्थीको शब्दभण्डार क्षमता विकासमा सघाउनुका साथै उनीहरूमा शब्दहरूको अर्थ बुझ्ने क्षमतामा पनि विकास हुने देखिन्छ । शब्दहरूलाई अर्थ खुल्ने गरी वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्न लगाउने खालका प्रश्नहरूले विद्यार्थीको उत्पादनात्मक शब्दभण्डार क्षमता विकासका साथै शब्दार्थ बोध र सन्दर्भपूर्ण प्रयोग गर्ने क्षमता विकास हुने अवस्था देखिन्छ । पाठबाट उखानटुक्काहरू खोज्ने, तिनलाई वाक्यमा प्रयोग गर्ने वा अनुच्छेद लेख्न लगाउने जस्ता अभ्यासहरूबाट विद्यार्थीको मौलिक र सिर्जनात्मक क्षमता विकास हुने सम्भावना देखिन्छ । शब्दहरूलाई कोशक्रममा राख्ने खालको अभ्यासले विद्यार्थीमा शब्दकोश प्रयोग गरी अर्थ खोज्ने सिप विकास तथा बानी निर्माण हुने सम्भावना देखिन्छ । तिनले भाषातत्त्वसम्बन्धी समावेशक र समावेश्य शब्द पहिचान गर्ने अभ्यासले विद्यार्थीमा शब्दभण्डार तथा भाषातत्त्वसम्बन्धी क्षमता अभिवृद्धिमा सघाउ पुग्ने सम्भावना देखिन्छ । समष्टिमा हेर्दा शब्दभण्डार क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले कथा पाठका अभ्यासमा समेटिएका प्रश्नहरू उपयुक्त र सबल देखिन्छन् ।

### **बोध प्रश्न/अभ्यास**

कथाका पाठहरूमा राखिएका यससँग सम्बन्धित अभ्यासहरू अनुच्छेद दिएर गराइने बोध प्रश्नोत्तरका साथै छोटो उत्तरात्मक प्रश्नहरूसमेत रहेका छन् । कथाको अनुच्छेद सङ्ख्या पहिल्याउने, कथाभित्रका घटना तथा सन्दर्भहरू पहिचान गर्ने, अनुच्छेदको वाक्य सङ्ख्या पहिचान गर्ने, अनुच्छेदको शीर्ष वाक्य तथा मुख्य घटना पहिचान गर्ने, पात्रसङ्ख्या पहिल्याउने, निश्चित घटना तथा परिवेशको कारण पहिल्याउने, कथाभित्रका निश्चित कुरा कसले कसलाई भनेका हुन् भन्ने कुराको खोजी

गर्ने, प्रमुख घटना भएका अनुच्छेद पहिचान गर्ने, तोकिएका विभिन्न अनुच्छेदको आशय बताउने, तर्क दिने, सङ्क्षिप्त रूपमा तुलना गर्नेलगायतका बोधप्रश्नहरू निर्माण गरिएका छन् । यसरी हेर्दा यी प्रश्नहरू पनि प्रत्यक्ष रूपमा कथा शिक्षणको उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजन हासिल हुने खालका अर्थात् सबल देखिन्छन् ।

### **घटनाक्रम मिलाउने अभ्यास**

कथा पाठहरूमा दिइएका घटनाहरूलाई कथाका आधारमा क्रम मिलाएर लेख्न लगाउने, घटनाक्रम जनाउने बुँदाहरू दिएर कथा निर्माण गर्न लगाउने जस्ता अभ्यासहरू समावेश गरिएका छन्, जुन प्रत्यक्ष रूपमा कथा विधा शिक्षणको विशिष्ट प्रयोजनसँग सम्बन्धित हुन्छन् । यस्ता अभ्यासबाट विद्यार्थीमा आफूले देखेका, सुनेका र जानेका विषयवस्तुलाई सिलसिला/क्रमबद्ध रूपमा अभिव्यक्त गर्ने सिप विकास हुने देखिन्छ । यस आधारमा यी प्रश्नहरू पनि कथा शिक्षणको उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजन हासिल हुने खालका देखिन्छन् ।

### **पठनबोध (दृष्टांश र अदृष्टांश) सम्बन्धी अभ्यास**

यहाँ विश्लेष्य कथाका अभ्यासमा दृष्टांश र अदृष्टांश दुवै खालका अनुच्छेद दिइएका छन् । दृष्टांशअन्तर्गत कारण पहिचान गर्ने, मनोभाव बुझाउने, आशय पहिचान गर्ने, घटना बताउने, आफ्ना धारणा राख्ने, अनुमान गर्ने, मुख्य कुरा टिपोट गर्ने, दुईओटा कथामा घटना टिपोट गरी सार लेख्ने र दुईओटामा सार मात्र लेख्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू सोधेर विद्यार्थीलाई बोध प्रश्नोत्तर गराउन खोजिएको छ । अदृष्टांशअन्तर्गत कारण पहिल्याउने, भिन्नता पहिचान गर्ने, तात्पर्य खुलाउने, आफ्नो धारणा दिने, भाषिक संरचना र वर्णविन्यास पहिचान गर्ने साथै कक्षामा सामूहिक रूपमा संवादात्मक प्रस्तुति गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन् । यी पनि अति सङ्क्षिप्त र सङ्क्षिप्त गरी दुई खालका छन् । यसरी कथाका सबै पाठमा दृष्टांश र भिन्न विषय क्षेत्रका अदृष्टांश साथै अति सङ्क्षिप्त र सङ्क्षिप्त प्रकृतिका अभ्यास गर्न मिल्ने प्रश्नहरू समेटिएकाले बोधसम्बन्धी पर्याप्त अवसर प्राप्त भई विद्यार्थीमा पठनबोध क्षमता विकासका लागि विशेष सहयोग पुग्ने अवस्था देखिन्छ

। यस आधारमा यी प्रश्नहरू पनि कथा शिक्षणको प्रयोजनका हिसाबले सबल देखिन्छन् ।

### **व्याख्यात्मक अभ्यास**

कथाका अभ्यासमा पाठभित्रबाट खास खास अंश दिई तिनको व्याख्या गर्न लगाउने खालका प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन् । यस्ता प्रश्नले विद्यार्थीमा भावबोध तथा तिनको व्याख्या, विश्लेषण, समीक्षा गर्ने जस्ता उच्च भाषिक दक्षता हासिल हुन सक्ने मात्र नभएर पढेका सामग्रीका बारेमा आफ्ना दृष्टिकोणहरू प्रस्तुत गर्ने सिपको समेत विकासमा सघाउ पुग्ने देखिन्छ ।

### **समीक्षात्मक अभ्यास**

विद्यार्थीले पढेका विषयवस्तुहरूको समीक्षा गर्ने, असर र परिणाम बताउने, कारण पहिल्याउने, पात्रको चरित्र चित्रण तथा पात्रहरूका चारित्रिक विशेषताहरूको तुलना गर्ने, पात्रका मनोविज्ञान उल्लेख गर्ने, परिवेश वर्णन/चित्रण गर्ने, शीर्षक सार्थकता देखाउने, कुनै विषयका पक्षविपक्षमा रहेर आफ्ना तर्क तथा विचारहरू प्रस्तुत गर्ने, समीक्षा गर्ने, वर्णन गर्ने, र चर्चा गर्ने खालका प्रश्नहरू समेटिएका छन् । यिनले विद्यार्थीमा उच्च दक्षतामूलक सिप विकास गर्न विशेष सहयोग गर्दछन् । यसरी हेर्दा यी प्रश्नहरू पनि कथा शिक्षणको उद्देश्य वा प्रयोजनका हिसाबले उपयुक्त देखिन्छन् ।

### **प्रतिक्रियात्मक अभ्यास**

यी कथाका पाठहरूमा खास गरी कथातत्त्वहरू (विषयवस्तु, पात्र, पात्रका विशेषता/चरित्र, कथाको परिवेश, शीर्षक सार्थकता आदि)सँग सम्बन्धित रहेर पाठक प्रतिक्रिया दिने खालका प्रश्नहरू समेटिएका छन् । कथा विधाका पाठपछाडिका अभ्यासहरूमा यस्ता प्रश्न समेटिनुलाई कथा विधा शिक्षणको विशिष्ट प्रयोजनका दृष्टिले महत्त्वपूर्ण मानिन्छ । यस खालका प्रश्नहरूबाट विद्यार्थीमा विषयवस्तु बुझेर धारणा बनाउने र सोबारे स्वतन्त्र दृष्टिकोण प्रस्तुत गर्ने क्षमता विकासमा विशेष सहयोग पुग्दछ । त्यसैले यी प्रश्नहरू पनि यस सन्दर्भमा सबल देखिन्छन् ।

### **बुँदा टिपोट/सारांश लेखनसम्बन्धी अभ्यास**

कक्षा दशको 'नेपाली' पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा विधामा प्रयुक्त अभ्यास हेर्दा 'शत्रु' कथा पाठका अभ्यासमा बुँदा टिपोटसम्बन्धी एउटा प्रश्न समावेश गरिएको छ, तर सारांश लेखनसम्बन्धी अभ्यास छैन । प्रश्न रखाइका हिसाबले यसलाई सुधारात्मक पक्ष मान्न सकिन्छ ।

### **सिर्जना र परियोजना कार्यमा आधारित अभ्यास**

कथा विधाका अभ्यासका दिइएका बुँदालाई आधार मानी थप घटना निर्माण गरेर कथा तयार पार्न लगाउने, ऐतिहासिक विषयवस्तुमा आधारित कुनै कथा खोजी कक्षामा प्रस्तुत गर्न लगाउने, दिइएको सन्दर्भलाई आधार मानी थप घटना निर्माण गर्दै एकसय शब्दमा नघटाई एउटा कथा लेख्न लगाउने, दिइएका बुँदाका आधारमा छोटो कथा लेख्न लगाउने, विद्यार्थीले अध्ययन गरेको कुनै एउटा सामाजिक कथाको घटना, पात्र र परिवेशको समीक्षा गरी कक्षामा सुनाउन लगाउने, विद्यार्थीलाई मन परेको शीर्षकमा एउटा कथा लेख्न लगाउने, र पुस्तकालयबाट कुनै एउटा कथा खोजेर ल्याई कक्षामा सुनाउन लगाउने खालका अभ्यासहरू समावेश गरिएका छन् । यस्ता अभ्यासहरूले विद्यार्थीमा मौलिक तथा सिर्जनात्मक क्षमताको विकासमा सहयोग पुग्ने देखिन्छ । यस दृष्टिले प्रस्तुत पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठका अभ्यासमा राखिएका प्रश्नहरू सबल देखिन्छन् ।

### **सुनाइ र बोलाइ अभ्यास**

प्रस्तुत पाठ्यपुस्तकमा कथा विधाका चारओटा पाठमा मात्र नभएर सबै अर्थात् सोह्रओटै पाठका सुनाइ र बोलाइसम्बन्धी अभ्यासलाई अलगगै रूपमा "सुनाइ पाठ" शीर्षक दिएर राखिएको छ । यसमा पाठ सुनेर दिइएका प्रश्न ठिक बेठिक के हुन् सो छुट्याउन, खाली ठाउँमा उपयुक्त शब्द भर्न र बोध प्रश्नहरूको उत्तर दिन लगाउने खालका प्रश्नहरू समावेश गरिएका छन् । यस्ता अभ्यासहरूले विद्यार्थीमा श्रुतिबोधात्मक भाषिक सिप तथा क्षमता विकास गर्नमा खास सहयोग गर्ने देखिन्छ । यस



आधारमा प्रस्तुत पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठका अभ्यासमा राखिएका प्रश्नहरू उपयुक्त देखिन्छन् ।

### निष्कर्ष

कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तक ( २०८०)का कथा विधाका पाठपछि राखिएका अभ्यासहरूको सङ्ख्या, प्रकार, पाठ्यक्रमअनुरूपता, विद्यार्थीमा भाषिक सिप विकास गराउने दृष्टिले तिनको उपयुक्ततालाई समस्या र यिनै समस्याको समाधानको उद्देश्यमा केन्द्रित भएर गरिएको यस अध्ययनमा कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा पाठका अभ्यासहरू भाषिक सिप विकासमा केन्द्रित देखिन्छन् । यो भाषाशिक्षणीय मर्मअनुरूप नै रहेको पाइन्छ । तीमध्ये सबैभन्दा बढी लेखाइ सिप त्यसपछि क्रमशः पढाइ, बोलाइ र सुनाइमा जोड दिइएको पाइन्छ । सिद्धान्ततः विद्यालयको माथिल्ला कक्षामा गरिने भाषाशिक्षणभित्रको विधाशिक्षणमा यसो हुनु उपयुक्त देखिन्छ । यहाँ अध्ययन गरिएका चार पाठमध्ये शब्दभण्डार, बोध र अभिव्यक्ति, सुनाइ र बोलाइ साथै सिर्जना र परियोजनाका “घरभण्डार”मा तेइस, “शत्रु”मा छबिस, “कर्तव्य”मा चौबिस तथा “आयाम”मा तेइस ओटा प्रश्न छन् । प्रायः प्रश्नहरूमा प्रशस्त मात्रामा उपप्रश्नहरू रहेका छन्,

र यसो हुनुलाई अभ्यासमा विविधता हुनुपर्छ भन्ने सैद्धान्तिक दृष्टिले हेर्दा उपयुक्त मान्न सकिन्छ । यी कथा पाठमा पाठ्यक्रमको अपेक्षाअनुरूप चारओटै सिप विकास हुने खालका प्रश्नहरू रहेका छन् । सिप विकासका दृष्टिले यी अभ्यासहरू सबल देखिन्छन् । कथा विधा शिक्षण प्रयोजनका आधारमा विश्लेषण गर्दा यी पाठका अभ्यासहरू शब्दभण्डार र पठनबोध क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले उत्कृष्ट छन् । प्रश्नोत्तर, घटनाक्रम, समीक्षा, प्रतिक्रिया लेखन, सिर्जना र परियोजना कार्यसम्बद्ध सिकाइ क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले भने मध्यम स्तरका छन् । सारांश लेखन र बुँदाटिपोट क्षमता विकासका दृष्टिले भने कमजोर देखिन्छन् । यहाँका अभ्यासमा सुनाइ र बोलाइलाई छुट्टै “सुनाइ पाठ” शीर्षक दिएर राख्नु साथै सुनाइ र बोलाइलाई अलग्गै शीर्षक दिएर राखी तिनलाई यिनै सिप विकासमा केन्द्रित गराउनुलाई यस पुस्तकको नयाँ र सकारात्मक पक्ष मान्न सकिन्छ । अधिल्ला अधिल्ला शृङ्खलाका तुलनामा यस पाठ्यपुस्तकमा सिर्जनात्मक र परियोजनामूलक अभ्यासहरू बढाउँदै लगेको कुरालाई थप सबल पक्ष मान्न सकिए तापनि सारांश र बुँदा टिपोटसम्बन्धी प्रश्नहरूमा थप विविधता र पर्याप्तता ल्याउनु उपयुक्त हुने निष्कर्ष निकालिएको छ ।

### सन्दर्भ सामग्रीहरू

अधिकारी, हे. (२०६९). *नेपाली भाषा शिक्षण* (छै.सं.). विद्यार्थी पुस्तक भण्डार ।

काफ्ले, उ. (सन् २०२०). कक्षा दशको नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यपुस्तकमा बोलाइ सिपको अभ्यास, *आयाम* :

*इन्टरडिसिप्लिनरी जर्नल अफ एजुकेसन*, ५(१-२), १४५-१५८.

<https://doi.org/10.3126/ire.V5i1&2.34745>

घिमिरे, दि. (सन् २०२२). कक्षा ११ को ‘नेपाली’ पाठ्यपुस्तकका कथा विधामा प्रयुक्त नमुना अभ्यास. *इन्टर*

*डिसिप्लिनरी जर्नल अफ एजुकेसन*, ७(२), १-१०. <https://doi.org/10.3126/ire.v7i2.50466>

ढकाल, शा. (२०६९). *नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रम, पाठ्यपुस्तक तथा शिक्षण पद्धति*. शुभकामना प्रकाशन ।

हुङ्गेल, भो., र दाहाल, दु. (२०६९). *भाषा पाठ्यक्रम तथा शिक्षण विधि*. एम. के. पब्लिसर्स एन्ड डिस्ट्रिब्युटर्स

।

पाविके. (२०७८). *माध्यमिक शिक्षा पाठ्यक्रम, कक्षा ९-१०*. पाठ्यक्रम विकास केन्द्र ।

पाविके. (२०८०). नेपाली, कक्षा १०. पाठ्यक्रम विकास केन्द्र ।

पौडेल, टी., भट्टराई, ती., र बराल, म. (२०७५). *नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रम, पाठ्यपुस्तक तथा शिक्षण पद्धति*.  
जुपिटर प्रिन्टिङ एन्ड पब्लिसिङ हाउस ।

पौडेल, ने., र खतिवडा, ती. (२०६५). *नेपाली भाषा पाठ्यक्रम, पाठ्यपुस्तक तथा शिक्षण पद्धति*. पैरवी  
प्रकाशन ।

पौडेल, मा. (२०७०). *भाषिक विद्या शिक्षण*. विद्यार्थी पुस्तक भण्डार ।

बराल, म. (२०७४). *नेपाली भाषाशिक्षण*. एन. वि. डी. प्रकाशन ।

रिमाल, डि. (२०७६ असार). *भाषा सिकाइमा कथा विद्या समावेश गरिनुको शैक्षणिक प्रयोजन*. *शिक्षा*  
*पत्रिका*, १५६-१६९ ।

शर्मा, के., र पौडेल, मा. (२०६०). *नेपाली भाषा र साहित्य शिक्षण*. न्यु हीरा बुक्स इन्टरप्राइजेज ।

शर्मा, के., र पौडेल, मा. (२०६८). *नेपाली भाषा शिक्षणका सन्दर्भहरू*. विद्यार्थी पुस्तक भण्डार ।



**Koshi Saint James College, Itahari**